Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 830SH.

- For proper handset use, read this guide beforehand.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 830SH is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact Customer Service, General Information (**P.13-38**) about unclear or missing information.

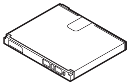
Chapter Contents At A Glance

Notes

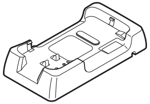
- Most operation descriptions are based on default settings with handset open (**P.1-2**) in Standby (**P.1-6**).
- Operations and results may differ by handset status.
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only.
- Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- "(Japanese)" appears next to functions or applications which require Japanese ability to use as intended.

Accessories

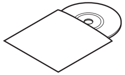
■ Battery (SHBBY1)



■ Desktop Holder (SHEAY1)



■ Utility Software (Japanese)*



*Complimentary sample.

- For accessory-related information, please contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.13-38**).
- Use specified Charger (sold separately) only.
- Utility Software is designed exclusively for 830SH. Download newest versions via SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.13-21**).

Safety Precautions

Read safety precautions before using handset.

- Observe precautions to avoid injury to self or others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

These labels indicate the degree of risk from improper use:

⚠ DANGER	**Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ WARNING	**Risk of death or serious injury from improper use**
⚠ CAUTION	**Risk of serious injury or damage to property from improper use**

These symbols indicate prohibited or compulsory actions:

Prohibited	**Prohibited actions**
Do Not Disassemble	**Disassembly prohibited**
Avoid Liquids Or Moisture	**Exposure to liquids prohibited**
Do Not Use Wet Hands	**Use with wet hands prohibited**

Compulsory	**Compulsory actions**
Disconnect Power Source	**Unplug Charger from outlet**

⚠ DANGER

Handset, Battery & Charger

Use specified battery, Charger and Desktop Holder only (P.v, P.1-4).
Non-specified equipment use may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating or bursting.

Compulsory

Do not short-circuit Charging Terminals.
Keep metal objects away from Charging Terminals. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry battery.

Prohibited

Battery

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage or fire. Do not:
- Heat or dispose of battery in fire
- Open/modify/disassemble battery
- Damage or solder battery
- Use a damaged or warped battery
- Use non-specified charger (**P.1-4**)
- Force battery into handset
- Charge battery near fire or sources of heat; or expose it to extreme heat
- Use battery for other equipment
- Use non-specified battery

Prohibited

If battery fluid gets in eyes, do not rub; rinse with water and consult a doctor immediately.
Eyes may be severely damaged.

Compulsory

Desktop Holder

Do not use supplied Desktop Holder for other equipment.
Supplied Desktop Holder is designed exclusively for 830SH. Do not use for other devices; may cause overheating, fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

⚠ WARNING

Handset, Battery & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into the handset, Charger or Desktop Holder.
Do not insert metal or flammable objects into handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause fire or electric shock. Keep out of children's reach.

Prohibited

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.
Fire or electric shock may result.

Prohibited

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.
Keep handset, Charger and Desktop Holder away from chemicals or liquids; fire or electric shock may result.

Prohibited

Do not place battery, handset, Charger or Desktop Holder in ovens, microwave ovens or other cooking appliances.
Battery or other parts may leak, burst, overheat or ignite; may cause malfunction, accident or injury.

Prohibited

Do not disassemble or modify handset or related hardware.
- Do not open handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; may cause electric shock or injury. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset, Charger or Desktop Holder; fire or electric shock may result.

Do Not Disassemble

If an abnormality occurs, or water/ foreign matter is inside handset:
If handset emits an unusual sound, smoke or odor, or if water or foreign matter is inside it, discontinue use; may cause fire or electric shock. Turn off handset, remove battery and unplug AC Charger; contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Disconnect Power Source

Keep handset off and Charger disconnected near gas stations or places with fire/explosion risk. Handset use near petrochemicals or other flammables may cause fire/ explosion; turn handset off before using Osaifu-Keitai® at gas stations (cancel IC Card Lock beforehand).

Compulsory

Do not subject handset, Charger or Desktop Holder to strong shocks or impacts.

Prohibited

- Avoid strong shocks to AC Charger while it is plugged into the outlet; may cause malfunction or injury.
- Strong shocks or impacts to handset, Charger or Desktop Holder may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset be damaged, remove battery then contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use; may cause fire, electric shock or injury.

Handset

Take measures to prevent accidents.

Prohibited

- Do not use handset while driving; park beforehand. Phone use while driving is prohibited by the Road Traffic Law (revised November 1, 2004).
- Do not use Headphones while driving or cycling. Accidents may result.
- Moderate volume outside, especially near road/rail crossings, etc. to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by strap.

May result in injury or breakage.

Prohibited

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Compulsory

Adjust vibration and ringtone settings:

Users with a heart condition/pacemaker/defibrillator should adjust handset settings accordingly.

Compulsory

During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of lightning strike or electric shock.

Compulsory

Charger & Desktop Holder

Use only the specified voltage.

Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.

Prohibited

- AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
  - SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Do not use power adapters.

Using AC Charger with step-up/step-down transformer may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

Prohibited

Charger care

- Do not touch with wet hands. Electric shock may occur.

Do Not Use Wet Hands

- Pull AC Charger straight out to unplug it; may cause malfunction or injury.
- Do not use multiple cords in one outlet; may cause excess heat/fire.
- Do not bend, twist, pull or set objects on cord. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.

Prohibited

Do not short-circuit Charger terminals.

May cause overheating, fire or electric shock. Keep metal away from terminals.

Prohibited

Damaged AC Charger cord:

May cause fire or electric shock; discontinue use and purchase a new Charger.

Compulsory

During thunderstorms:

Unplug AC Charger to avoid damage, fire or electric shock.

Disconnect Power Source

Charger/Desktop Holder use and children:

May cause electric shock/injury; keep out of reach.

Compulsory

Do not use Desktop Holder inside vehicles.

Extreme temperature or vibration may cause fire or damage handset, etc.

Prohibited

Battery

- If battery does not charge properly, stop trying. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.
- At signs of a battery leak, avoid fire sources. It may catch fire or burst.

Compulsory

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration or distortion, remove battery from handset.
It may leak, overheat or explode.

Compulsory

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator should keep handset more than 22 cm away. Compulsory

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Turn handset off in crowds or trains where persons with implanted pacemaker/defibrillator may be near. Compulsory

Radio waves can interfere with implanted pacemakers or defibrillators causing such devices to malfunction.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities: Compulsory

- Do not enter an operating room or an Intensive or Coronary Care Unit while carrying a handset.
- Keep handset off in hospitals, including lobbies.
- Obey medical facility rules on mobile phone use.

Consult electronic medical equipment vendor on radio wave effects. Compulsory

⚠ CAUTION

Handset, Battery & Charger

Handset care ⚠

- Place handset on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep handset away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage or burnout.
- Keep handset away from heat/direct sunlight (e.g., inside vehicles, etc.). Warping, discoloration or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep handset out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage environment ⚠

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using handset on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep handset away from credit cards, telephone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

Handset temperature ⚠

Handset may become hot while in use. Avoid prolonged contact with skin, especially at high temperature. May cause burn injuries.

Avoid leaving handset in extreme heat (inside vehicles, etc.). Prohibited

Hot handset may lead to burn injuries.

Volume settings ⚠

Moderate handset volume; excessive volume may damage ears or hearing.

Inside vehicles ⚠

Handset use may cause electronic equipment to malfunction.

If you experience any skin irritation associated with handset use, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor. Compulsory

Metal and other materials (**P.13-18**) may cause skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness depending on your physical condition.

Do not look into Infrared Port during infrared transmissions. Prohibited

Eyesight may be affected.

Charger & Desktop Holder

AC Charger cord

- Grasp plug (not cord) to disconnect AC Charger. May cause fire/electric shock.
- Keep cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if plug is hot or improperly connected. May cause fire/electric shock.

Prohibited

Compulsory

Always charge handset in a well-ventilated area.
Avoid covering/wrapping Charger and Desktop Holder; may cause damage/fire.

Prohibited

During periods of disuse
Always unplug AC Charger after use.

Disconnect Power Source

Handset maintenance
Always disconnect AC Charger when cleaning handset.

Disconnect Power Source

Do not touch Desktop Holder while in use.
May cause burn injuries.

Prohibited

Battery

Do not throw or abuse battery. Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.

Prohibited

Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside a closed vehicle; may reduce battery performance or overheat. An overheated battery may cause fire.

Prohibited

Do not expose battery to liquids. Performance may deteriorate.

Avoid Liquids Or Moisture

If battery fluid contacts skin or clothes, rinse with clean water immediately.

Compulsory

Do not dispose of an exhausted battery with ordinary refuse; always tape over battery terminals before disposal. Take battery to a SoftBank Shop, or follow the local disposal regulations.

Prohibited

Keep battery out of children's reach.

Compulsory

- Charge battery in ambient temperatures between 5°C and 35°C; outside this range, battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.
- If your child is using handset, explain all instructions and supervise usage.
- If there is abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.
- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of files saved on handset/Memory Card. Keep separate copies of Phone Book entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
- An export license may be required to carry the handset into other countries if it is to be used by or transferred to another person. However, no such license is required when you take the handset abroad for personal use on a vacation or business trip and then bring it back.
  Export control regulations in the United States provide that an export license granted by the US government is required to carry the handset into Cuba, Iran, North Korea, Sudan or Syria.
- Should interference occur between handset and a hearing aid, consult the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aid.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use handset aboard aircraft (keep power off). Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5°C - 35°C (35% - 85% humidity).
- Avoid extreme temperatures and direct sunlight.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid scratching handset Display.
- When closing handset, keep fingers, straps, etc. outside to avoid injury or damaging the Display.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity (e.g., precipitation, perspiration, beach, cold air from air conditioning, restroom, bath/shower room, etc.).
- Avoid heavy objects or excessive pressure. May cause malfunction or injury.
  - Do not sit on handset in back pants pocket.
  - Do not place heavy objects on handset inside handbags, packs, etc.
- Connect only specified products to Headphone Port. Other devices may malfunction or cause damage.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset upgrade/replacement or service cancellation: Camera; Media Player; S! Applications. After a period of disuse, these functions may be unusable; retrieve Network Information (**P.12-15**) to restore usability.

Mobile Camera

- Mind your manners when using handset camera.
- Test the camera before capturing/recording special moments (e.g., weddings, etc.).
- Do not use handset camera in places where photography or videography is prohibited.

Electromagnetic Waves

For body-worn operation, this phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with accessories containing no metal, that position handset a minimum of 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

FCC Notice

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Information to User

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits of a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation; if this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

1. Reorient/relocate the receiving antenna.
2. Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
3. Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
4. Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.
The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.
Highest SAR value:

Model	FCC ID	At the Ear	On the Body
830SH	APYHRO00073	0.753 W/kg	0.578 W/kg

This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly.
The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided.
The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found at https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/GenericSearch.cfm under the Display Grant section after searching on the corresponding FCC ID (see table above).
Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) Website at http://www.phonefacts.net.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.
The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg.
As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide*.
Highest SAR value:

Model	At the Ear**	On the Body
830SH	1.298 W/kg	1.321 W/kg

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the Network. The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*Please see Electromagnetic Waves on the left for important notes regarding body-worn operation.
**Measured in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

Hereby, Sharp Telecommunications of Europe Ltd, declares that 830SH is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
A copy of the original declaration of conformity for each model can be found at the following Internet address:
http://www.sharp.co.jp/k-tai/

Rights, Trademarks & Patents

Portrait Rights

Portrait rights protect individuals' right to refuse to be photographed or to refuse unauthorized publication/ use of their photographs. Portrait rights consist of the right to privacy, which is applicable to all persons, and the right to publicity, which protects the interests of celebrities. Therefore, photographing others including celebrities and publicizing/ distributing their photographs without permission is illegal; use handset camera responsively.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials and copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only. Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in handset is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109 5,504,773
5,101,501 5,506,865 5,109,390 5,511,073
5,228,054 5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338 5,600,754
5,414,796 5,657,420 5,416,797 5,659,569
5,710,784 5,778,338

Video recording and playback are based on **MPEG-4**.
This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Video Standard ("MPEG-4 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA.
See http://www.mpegla.com.
This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard, except that an additional license and payment of royalties are necessary for encoding in connection with (i) data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis and/or (ii) data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use. Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC.
See http://www.mpegla.com for additional details.

RSA SECURED

Handset employs RSA® BSAFE™ software developed by RSA Security Inc.
RSA is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc.
BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

This product is equipped with JBlend™ designed to accelerate the performance of Java™ Application.
Powered by JBlend™.

JBlend and JBlend-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
Java and Java-related brands are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

microSDHC™, microSD™ and miniSD™ are trademarks of the SD Card Association.

This product employs NetFront Browser (Internet browser) and NetFront SMIL Player developed by ACCESS Co., Ltd.

ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan or other countries.
This product includes a module developed by Independent JPEG Group.

Microsoft, PowerPoint and Excel are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™.
Mascot Capsule is a registered trademark of HI Corporation.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.
FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
is a registered trademark of FeliCa Network, Inc.

Osaifu-Keitai is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO, INC.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.

ADOBE® FLASH® ENABLED

This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ player software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

Document Viewer is enabled by Picsel Technologies.
Picsel, Picsel Powered, Picsel Viewer, Picsel File Viewer, Picsel Document Viewer, Picsel PDF Viewer and the Picsel cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Picsel Technologies Ltd.

Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

Genius Mobile English-Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Genius Mobile Japanese-English Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan
Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary ©2005-2008 Taishukan

SOFTBANK, SoftBank and the SoftBank logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo! and Y! logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

CP8 PATENT

S! Information Channel, S! Quick News, S! Town, S! Loop, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, S! Application, Customized Screen, S! Familiar Usability, PC Mail, PC Site Browser, Multi Job, Weather Indicator, S! Addressbook Back-up, Video Call, Lifestyle-Appli, Input Memory, S! Mail, Graphic Mail, Feeling Mail, 3D Pictogram, Sha-mail, Movie Sha-mail and Secure Remote Lock are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

830SH meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the body, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law. 830SH has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 1.020 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network.

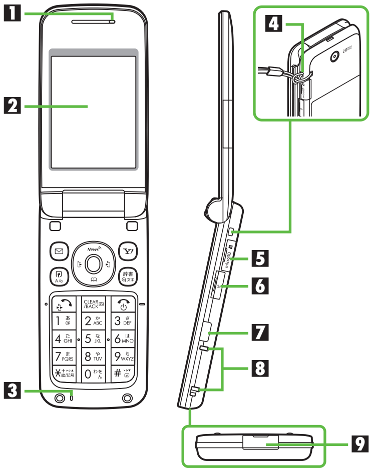
Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites.

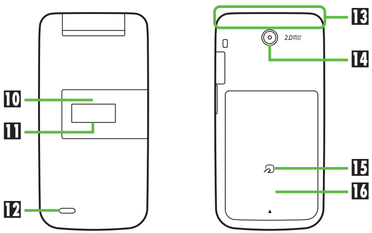
Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html (Japanese)

*Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

1 Getting Started

Parts & Functions



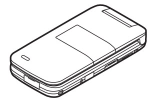


1. Earpiece
2. Display
3. Microphone
4. Strap Eyelet
5. Memory Card Slot (with Slot Cover)
6. Headphone Port (with Port Cover)
7. Infrared Port
8. Charging Terminals
9. External Device Port (with Port Cover)
10. Small Light
11. External Display
12. Speaker
13. Internal Antenna Location
14. External Camera (lens cover)
15. Logo
16. Battery Cover

- Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over Internal Antenna area.
- Replace Port Cover after Port use.
- Avoid metallic straps; Antenna sensitivity may be affected.

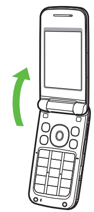
Handset Positions

Handset Closed



Keep handset closed when not in use.

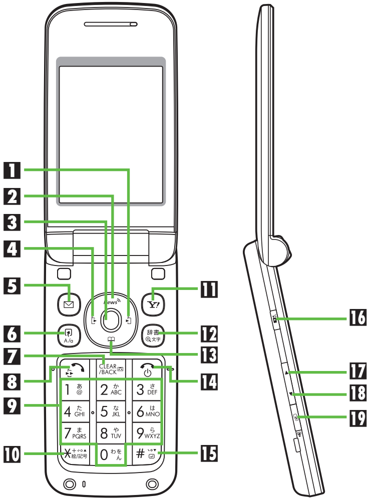
Handset Open



Open handset to place or answer calls, enter text, etc.

Handset Keys

Keys are indicated in this guide as shown.



1 Multi Selector (right)
Open Received Calls. Long Press to activate/cancel infrared.

2 Multi Selector (up)
Open Standby Window.

3 Center Key
Open Main Menu. Long Press to activate/cancel Keypad Lock.

4 Multi Selector (left)
Open Dialed Numbers.

5 Mail Key
Open Messaging menu. Long Press to open S! Mail Composition window.

6 Shortcuts & A/a Key
Open Shortcuts menu.

7 Clear/Back Key
Play Answer Phone messages. Long Press to activate/cancel Answer Phone.

8 Start Key
Open All Calls.

9 Keypad 0 - 9
Enter numbers to place calls or access functions (Quick Operations). Long Press to open Phone Book.

10 * Key
Enter *, +, P, ? and -. Long Press to open Status Template.

11 Yahoo! Keitai Key
Open Yahoo! Keitai portal. Long Press to open Yahoo! Keitai menu.

12 Dictionary & Text Key
Open Dictionary. Long Press to open Change Menu window.

13 Multi Selector (down)
Open Phone Book. Long Press to create new Phone Book entries.

14 Power On/Off Key
Toggle Standby display. Long Press to turn handset power off.

15 # Key
Enter #. Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.

Side Keys

16 S! Circle Talk Key
Open: Open S! Circle Talk member list.

17 Volume Up Key ◄
Closed: Scroll External Display indicators.
Long Press to check e-money balance.

18 Volume Down Key ►
Long Press to start Pretense Call.
Closed: Scroll External Display indicators.

19 Multi Job & Manner Key
Long Press to activate/cancel Manner mode.
Open: Select handset mode.
Closed: Toggle Clock view.

Multi Selector & Side Keys

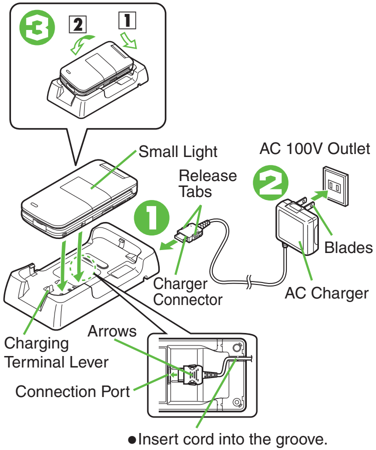
- In this guide, Multi Selector and Side Key operations are indicated as follows:

Press ↑ or ↓	↕
Press ← or →	↔
Press ↑, ↓, ← or →	✥
Press ◄ or ►	◄ ►

Charging Battery

Battery must be inserted in handset to charge it.
Together with Desktop Holder, use specified AC Charger **ZTDAA1** (sold separately) only. In this guide, ZTDAA1 is referred to as "AC Charger."

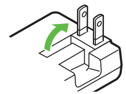
Charging with Desktop Holder



1 Insert AC Charger connector into Desktop Holder

- Connection Port is on the back of Desktop Holder.
- With arrows down, insert connector until it clicks.

2 Extend blades and plug AC Charger into AC outlet



3 Place handset onto Desktop Holder

- Fit tabs into slots as shown in 1 and push handset as indicated in 2 until it clicks into place (resting flat).
- Small Light illuminates red while charging.
- Small Light goes out when battery is full.

4 Disconnect 830SH from Desktop Holder

5 Unplug AC Charger

- Pull AC Charger straight out.
- Squeeze release tabs when removing AC Charger connector.

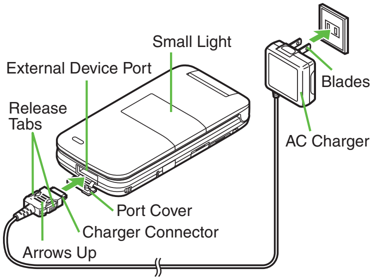
Important Desktop Holder Usage Notes

- Do not subject to force/pressure.
- If Headphones are connected, put cord in front.
- Unplug AC Charger after charging.

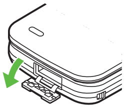
Cleaning Desktop Holder

- Battery may not charge properly if charging terminals are obstructed by dust, etc. Press and hold Charging Terminal Lever to clean the terminals (use a dry cotton swab); clean handset Charging Terminals as well.
- Be careful not to damage or directly touch charging terminals.
- Only press Charging Terminal Lever for cleaning.

Charging with AC Charger



1 Open Port Cover as shown



2 Connect AC Charger

- With arrows up, insert connector until it clicks.

3 Plug AC Charger into AC outlet

Important AC Charger Usage Note

- Fold back blades after charging. Do not pull, bend or twist the cord.

When Small Light Flashes

- Battery is unchargeable; may be defective or simply at the end of its life; replace it.

USB Charge

- Connect handset (with power on) to PC via USB Cable to charge battery.

Charging Battery Overseas

- SoftBank is not liable for problems resulting from charging battery abroad.

Advanced

Disabling USB Charge (**P.12-15**)

Handset Power On/Off

Power On

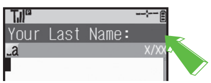
Follow these steps when powering on 830SH for the first time:

1 ⏻ **(Long)**

- After Power On Graphic, follow the steps below.
⏻ ➡ ⏻ ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓥ ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ ***設定*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓥ ***Language*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓥ ***English*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ⏻ (Long) ➡ ⏻ (Long) ➡ Change Menu window opens

2 ⓥ **Select option** ➡ ◉

Guide descriptions are based on Standard Menu.

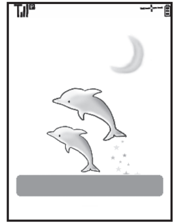


- My Details setup starts.

3 **Enter last name** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Enter first name** ➡ ◉

- Change Menu display option confirmation appears.

4 ⓥ ***Yes*** **or** ***No*** ➡ ◉



Standby

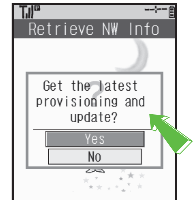
- Choose ***No*** to enter Standby immediately after powering on.

When USIM Card is Not Installed

- ***Insert USIM Card*** appears; insert the card to use handset.

Retrieving Network Information

Handset initiates Network Information retrieval when ✉, ◉ or Y! is pressed for the first time.



- Choose ***Yes*** and press ◉.
- Retrieve Network Information to use Network-related services; retrieval automatically sets Clock.

Power Off

1 ⏻ **(Long)**

- After Power Off Graphic, handset shuts down.

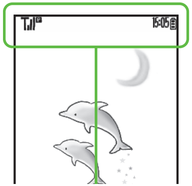
Advanced

Date & Time (**P.12-2**) Network (**P.12-15**)

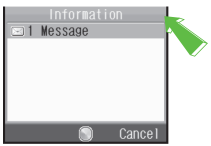
Display & Indicators

Viewing Display

Standby



- Indicators (signal strength, battery strength, etc.) appear.
- Information window opens at the bottom for Missed Calls, new mail, etc.

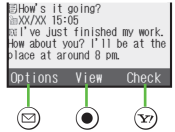


Information Window

- Information label (e.g., ***Message***, etc.) and count appear in Information window. Select an item and press ◉ to open it.

Softkeys

Functions/operations assigned to ✉, ◉ and Y! appear at the bottom.



Display Saving

- Display goes dark after Display Saving time elapses. Press any key to activate it.

Backlight

- Backlight turns off after Time Out time elapses. Press 0 - 9 to illuminate it (key press may affect active function).

Indicators

Basic Status



1		International roaming in progress
2		Signal strength*
3		Packet transmission available (3G)
		Packet transmission available (GSM)
4		Battery strength (may appear instead.)

*The more bars the better.

Function Status



1		Active S! Application
		Paused S! Application
		Music playback in progress
2		Memory Card in use
		Memory Card formatting
3		Multiple functions (Multi Job) active

Advanced

●Opening Information List Manually ●Clearing Information List (**P.1-17**)

Notifications



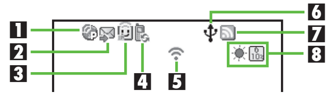
1		Unread mail
		Unread Delivery Report
2		Answer Phone active & message recorded
		Answer Phone canceled & message recorded
3		New Voicemail
4		S! Appli Notification
5		Contents Key received
6		Unread S! Information Channel info
		Software Update result
		Unread S! Quick News info
7		Unread S! Friend's Status notification

Warnings



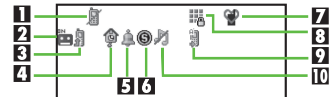
1		Mail memory low
2		Message delivery failure
3		Memory Card unusable/misinserted

Transmissions



1		Waiting/packet transmission in progress (3G)
		Waiting/packet transmission in progress (GSM)
		SSL browsing in progress
		Packet transmission protocol ready (3G)
		Packet transmission protocol ready (GSM)
2		Receiving mail
		Sending mail
3		S! Friend's Status online
4		Software Update in progress
5		Infrared transmission ready
6		USB Cable connected
		USB transmission in progress
		Infrared transmission in progress
		Infrared file transfer in progress
		S! Addressbook Back-up transmission in progress
		PC Site Browser in use
7		RSS-compatible site
8		Weather Indicator

Settings



1		Offline Mode active
2		Answer Phone active
3		Call Forwarding or Voicemail active (forwarding condition: ***Always***)*
4		Hour Minder active
5		Alarm set
		Schedule/Task (Alarm set)
		Schedule/Task (Alarm unset)
6		Show Secret Data active
		Function Lock active
7		Manner mode active
		Drive mode active
		Original mode active
8		Keypad Lock active
		IC Card Lock active
9		Auto Answer or Remote Monitor active
10		Ringtone (Silent)
		Ringtone (Increasing Volume)
		Vibration active

*Indicator does not appear when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls only, with Voicemail unset.

External Display Indicators

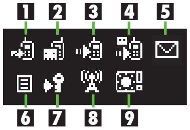
Basic Status



1		Signal strength*
2		Battery strength

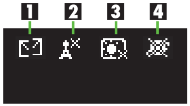
*The more bars the better.

Notifications



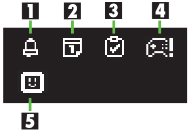
1		Missed Calls
2		Answer Phone message recorded
3		Missed Call Notification
4		New Voicemail
5		New mail
6		New Delivery Report
7		Contents Key received
8		Unread S! Information Channel info
9		Weather Indicator update

Warnings



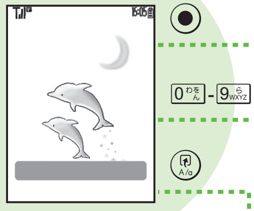
1		Message delivery failure
2		S! Information Channel info reception failure
3		Weather Indicator update failure
4		IP Service connection failure

Handset Status



1		Alarm
2		Schedule Alarm
3		Task Alarm
4		S! Appli Notification
5		Unread S! Friend's Status notification

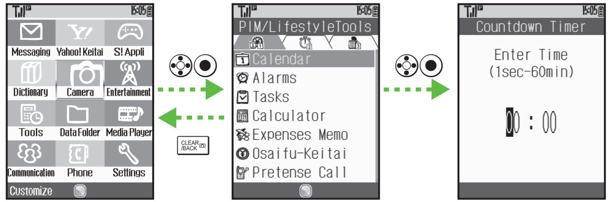
Handset Menus



- Press [key] to return to Standby from function windows, menus, etc.

Main Menu opens.

- Select an item and press ◉ to open Sub Menus/function window.

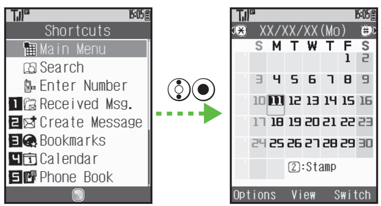


Main Menu

Shortcuts menu opens.

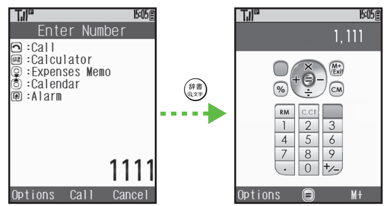
- Select a function and press ◉ to access it.

Shortcuts



Enter numbers to access functions.

- To activate functions, press the corresponding key.



Quick Operations

Advanced

Customizing Shortcuts (**P.1-17**)

Using Simplified Menus (Simple Menu)

Simple Menu Features

Activate Simple Menu to reduce available handset functions and simplify menus.



- Fonts are enlarged and appear in bold.
- Clock is enlarged (Calendar is hidden).

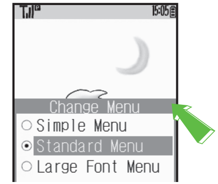
■ Menu Items

Messaging	Received Msg., Create Msg., Drafts, Templates, Sent Messages, Unsent Msg., Create SMS
Phone	Phone Book, Add New Entry, Play Messages, Answer Phone, Call VM, My Details, Speed Dial/Mail
Camera	-
Convenient Tool	Calendar, Alarms, Calculator, Assignment, Dictionary, Notepad, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk, Change Menu
Data Folder	-

Key assignments are largely the same as in Standard Menu.

Activating Simple Menu

1. **(Long)**



2. ***Simple Menu*** ➡ ●

While Using an Incompatible Function

- End the function before activating Simple Menu.

Canceling Simple Menu

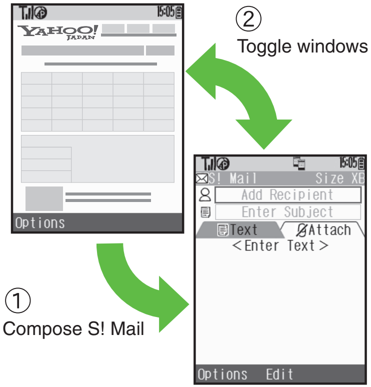
1. **(Long)**
2. ***Standard Menu*** ➡ ●

Toggling Active Functions (Multi Job)

Multi Job Feature

Access a function in Shortcuts menu while another is active.

While browsing the Internet



② Toggle windows

① Compose S! Mail

Multi Job may not be activated from some menus/windows (e.g., when selecting ringtone/ringvideo, etc.).

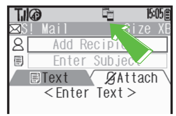
Using Multi Job

1 In a function window, (A/a)

In text entry/dial windows, Long Press (A/a).

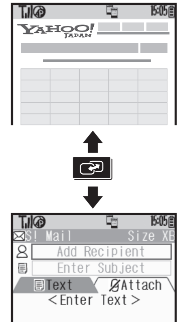


2 (navigation key) Select function ➡ ●



- Menu/window opens.

3 To toggle active windows, (toggle key)



4 (end key) ➡ Multi Job ends

- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Keypad Lock

Lock handset keys and prevent accidental operation/function activation.

1 **◉ (Long)**

- Keypad Lock activates.
- [power key] does not turn off handset power.

Incoming Calls while Keypad Lock is Active

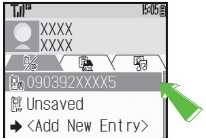
- Keypad Lock is temporarily canceled; press [call key] to answer calls. Keypad Lock reactivates after the call.

Canceling Keypad Lock

◉ (Long)

My Number

1 ● ➡ 0わをん



My Details Window

Handset phone number and the name entered at initial setup appear.

Editing My Details

[My Details Window] Y! ➡ ◯ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Clearing My Details

[My Details Window] ✉ ➡ ◯ *Reset My Details* ➡ ● ➡ ◯ *Yes* ➡ ●

Mobile Manners

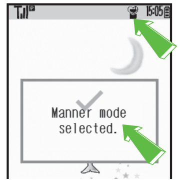
Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from using it in restaurants, hotel lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Mode

Mutes most handset function sounds.

1 **# (Long) or [key] (Long)**



- Manner mode is set.

When Manner Mode is Active

- Ringtones and other sounds are muted.
- 830SH vibrates for transmissions/alerts.
- Shutter click still sounds at fixed volume.

Canceling Manner Mode

(Long) or [key] (Long)

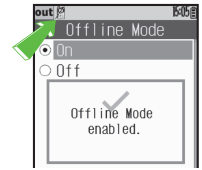
Offline Mode

Temporarily suspends all transmissions.

1 ● ➡ ◎ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Network Settings***

2 ◎ ***Offline Mode*** ➡ ●

3 ◎ ***On*** ➡ ●



- Offline Mode is set.

Canceling Offline Mode

In 3, ◎ *Off* ➡ ●

Advanced

Selecting a handset mode ● Customizing handset modes (**P.12-2**)

Security Codes

These codes are required for handset use.

- Write down Security Codes.
- Do not reveal Security Codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Handset Code	*9999* by default; use or change some functions
Center Access Code	4-digit code selected at contract; access Optional Services via landlines or change contract details
Network Password	4-digit code selected at contract; restrict incoming/ outgoing calls (Call Barring)

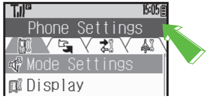
Change Network Password as needed.

Incorrect Code Entry

- ***Handset code is incorrect!*** appears; try again.
- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

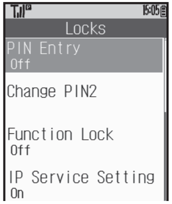
Changing Handset Code

1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Settings*** ➡ ●



Phone Settings Menu

2 ✣ ***Locks*** ➡ ●



3 ✣ ***Chg. Handset Code*** ➡ ●



4 **Enter current Handset Code** ➡ ●



5 **Enter new Handset Code** ➡ ●



6 **Re-enter new Handset Code** ➡ ●

Additional Functions

Information

Opening Information List Manually

● ➡ ✣ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ *Information* ➡ ●

Clearing Information List

● ➡ ✣ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ *Information* ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ ⓢ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ *Yes* ➡ ●

Shortcuts

Customizing Shortcuts

■Changing Default Shortcuts

ⓐ ➡ ⓢ Select item ➡ ✉ ➡ ⓢ *Assign* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select menu item ➡ ● ➡ ✣ Select new item ➡ ●

- For ***Dictionary*** or ***Camera***, omit new item selection step.

■Changing Item Order

ⓐ ➡ ⓢ Select item ➡ ✉ ➡ ⓢ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select target location ➡ ●

2

Basic Operations

Changing Font Size

Enlarging All Fonts

Activate Large Font Menu to enlarge fonts for menus, text entry, etc. as follows:



1. (Long)

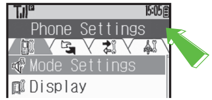


2. *Large Font Menu* ➡ ●

Canceling Large Font Menu
In 2, *Standard Menu* ➡ ●

Customizing Font Sizes

1. ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ●



Phone Settings Menu

2. *Display* ➡ ●
3. *Font Settings* ➡ ●



Font Settings Menu

4. *Font Size* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ●
5. Select size ➡ ●

Changing Font Weight

1. In Font Settings menu, *Font Weight* ➡ ●



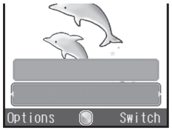
2. Select weight ➡ ●

Standby Display Options

Standby Window (Japanese)

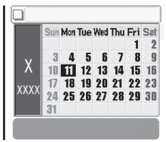
In Standby, view S! Quick News or Calendar, access shortcut icons, and more.

1 ⊙



Standby Window

2 Y!



- Press Y! to toggle panels. (Long Press Y! to toggle panels in reverse.)

3 ⊙ **Select item ➡ ◉**

4 ⊡ **➡ Standby Window closes**

Standby Window Panels

Shortcut Panel



Calendar/Tag Panel



News Panel



Member Panel



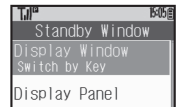
Selecting Panel Items

[Shortcut Panel]/[Calendar/Tag Panel] ✉ ➡ ⊙ *Select Item* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⊙ Select item ➡ ◉ (☐/☑) ➡ Y!

■ To the left is an example of Shortcut Panel with all items checked (☑).

Panel Selection

1 **In Standby Window, ✉ ➡ ⊙ *Standby Window* ➡ ◉**



2 **⊙ *Display Panel* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⊙ Select panel ➡ ◉ (☐/☑) ➡ Y!**

- Panels with ☑ (checked) appear in Standby Window.

Advanced

Changing Display Option (**P.2-23**)

Using Tags

1 **In Calendar/Tag Panel, (select row with ☐) ➡**

2 **Enter text ➡**



Checking/Unchecking Tags

➡ **Select tag** ➡ ➡ *Check Note* or *Uncheck* ➡

- Checked tag (with ☑) turns gray.

Deleting Tag Notes

➡ **Select tag** ➡ ➡ *Delete Note* ➡

- To delete all checked tags, follow these steps: ➡ ➡ *Delete Checked Note* ➡

Wallpaper

Some files may not be usable.

1 **➡ *Settings* ➡ ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡**

2 ***Wallpaper* ➡**



Wallpaper Menu

3 ***Preset Pictures* ➡ ➡ Select image ➡**

Using Data Folder Images

In 3, (select folder) ➡ ➡ Select image ➡ ➡

- For images smaller or larger than Display, follow these steps: **Select option** ➡ ➡

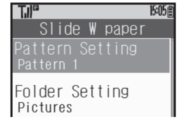
Selecting Images with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Follow these steps: ***Yes*** ➡ ➡

Slide Show Wallpaper

Set Slide Show to appear in Standby. Some images may not appear.

1 **In Wallpaper menu, *Slide W paper* ➡**



Slide Show Wallpaper Menu

2 ***Pattern Setting* ➡**

3 **Select pattern ➡**

Using Preset Images

In 2, *Folder Setting* ➡ ➡ *Preset Pictures* ➡

Advanced

Selecting Source Folder for Slide Show Wallpaper (**P.2-23**)

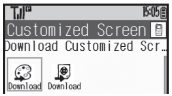
Display & Key Settings (**P.12-3 - 12-4**)

Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability (Japanese)

Downloading Customized Screen

Use preloaded Customized Screen or download new via handset as follows: Read information (price, etc.) on Customized Screen download page.

1 ● ➡ ✥ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ● ➡ ↕ ***Customized Screen*** ➡ ●



Customized Screen Menu

2 ✥ ***Download Customized Screen*** ➡ ●

- Handset connects to the Internet and source site list appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Customized Screen Setup

To install the most recent version, apply the file then download the updated one.

1 **In Customized Screen menu, ✥ (select Customized Screen) ➡ ●**

2 ● ➡ ●

Applying Fee-based Customized Screen

- If Contents Key is required, follow these steps:
  After 1, ● ➡ ↕ *Yes* ➡ ●
  - Read terms of service and then follow onscreen instructions.

When Selected Customized Screen is Active

- Cancellation confirmation appears after 1.

S! Familiar Usability

Download and install applications that load legacy model interfaces.

Downloading S! Familiar Usability

1 **In Customized Screen menu, ✥ *S! Familiar Usability* ➡ ●**

- Follow onscreen instructions.

S! Familiar Usability Setup

1 **In Customized Screen menu, ✥ (select application) ➡ ● ➡ ●**

Canceling Temporarily

● ➡ (Y!) ➡ ↕ ***通常ﾒﾆｭｰ*** ➡ ●

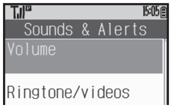
Advanced

Applying Preset Customized Screen / Canceling Customized Screen / Canceling S! Familiar Usability / Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability Unconditionally / Accessing Customized Screen Source Sites (**P.2-23**)

Customizing Handset Responses

Ringtone

1 ● ➡ ◎ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** ◎ ***Sounds & Alerts*** ➡ ●

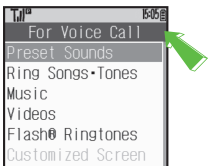


Sounds & Alerts Menu

2 ◎ ***Ringtone/videos*** ➡ ●

3 ◎ **Select item** ➡ ●

For ***For New Message***, etc., select ***Assign Tone*** and press ●.



4 ◎ **Select folder** ➡ ●

5 ◎ **Select tone/file** ➡ ●

Setting Ring Time for Incoming Mail, etc.

After 3, ◎ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●

Playing Video for Incoming Transmissions

In 4, ◎ *Videos* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select file ➡ ●

If Portion of File Content is Specifiable

- After 5, start point selection window opens. Follow these steps:

  ◎ Select start point ➡ ●

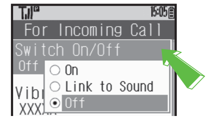
Selecting Files with Limited Usage Period

- A confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** and press ● to proceed.

Vibration

1 **In Sounds & Alerts menu,** ◎ ***Vibration*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Switch On/Off*** ➡ ●



3 ◎ ***On*** ➡ ●

4 ◎ ***Vibration Pattern*** ➡ ●

- To check vibration patterns, select one and press ✉.

5 ◎ **Select pattern** ➡ ●

Setting Ringtones to Control Vibration

In 3, ◎ *Link to Sound* ➡ ●

Precaution

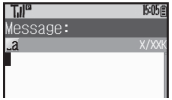
- Cancel Vibration when charging battery to help avoid accidents.

Advanced

Ringtone & Sound Settings (**P.12-5**)

Text Entry

Unless noted otherwise, text entry descriptions are for text entry windows.



Text Entry Window (Message Text)

Opening Help

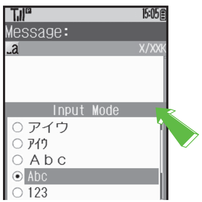
Ⓜ ➡ Ⓢ *Help* ➡ ●

Note

- Pressing [☎] repeatedly may not close text entry windows.

Switching Entry Modes

1 (辞書/文字)



- Available entry modes appear.

2 Ⓢ **Select mode ➡ ●**

- Entry Mode Indicators:

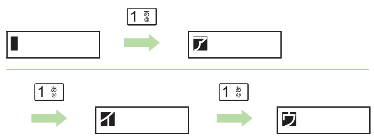
あ漢*	Kanji (hiragana)
ア/ｱ	Double/single-byte katakana
A/a	Double-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
A/a	Single-byte alphanumerics (upper/lower case)
1	Single-byte number
区	Character Code

* 予 appears when Predictive is active.

Character Entry Basics

Use Keypad to enter characters. Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key to toggle between character options for that key.

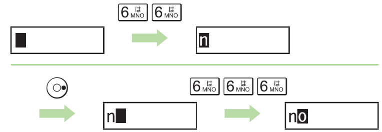
Example: In double-byte katakana entry, press [1] three times.



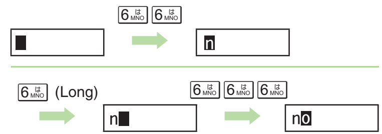
Press [↩] to toggle options in reverse.

To enter characters assigned to the same key, press Ⓢ first.

Example: In single-byte alphanumerics mode, enter *no*.



Long Press a key to enter the current character and advance cursor.

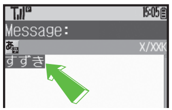


Entering Characters

Hiragana

Follow these steps to enter すずき in kanji (hiragana) mode:

1. 3 3 3 (す) ➡ ◎ ➡ 3 3 3 (す) ➡ * (ず) ➡ 2 2 (き)



2. ◉

Kanji

Convert すずき to 鈴木.

1. **Enter すずき and press ◎**



- In kanji (hiragana) mode, word suggestions change as hiragana is entered. (Predictive)

2. ◎ 鈴木

- To exit suggestion list, press CLEAR/BACK.

3. ◉



- Words likely to follow the entry appear based on previous entries. (Previous Usage)

When Target Word is Not Listed

- Press ✉ or Y! to segment hiragana to convert separately.
  - ■ Press Y! to toggle Predictive and Non-Predictive suggestions.

Phonetic Conversion

Enter reading in hiragana ➡ ✉

Selecting Multiple Converted Words

A/a

Advanced

● Inserting Line Breaks ● Inserting Spaces ● Using Character Codes ● Using Pager Code ● Clearing Entry Log (**P.2-24**)

● Disabling suggestions based on entered characters ● Disabling suggestions based on entered words ● Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list (**P.12-6**)

One-Hiragana Conversion

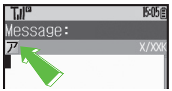
Enter the first hiragana to access previously selected words.
Example: ***鈴木*** was previously selected after conversion.

1. 3さDEF 3さDEF 3さDEF **(す)** ➡ (navigation key down)
2. (navigation key) **Select word/phrase** ➡ (center key)

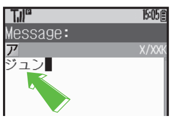
Katakana

Follow these steps to switch to double-byte katakana mode and enter ***ジュン***:

1. (辞書/文字 key) ➡ (navigation key) ***アイウ*** ➡ (center key)



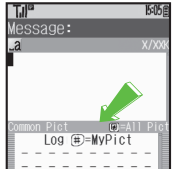
2. 3さDEF 3さDEF **(シ)** ➡ (*絵/記号 key) **(ジ)** ➡
8やTUV 8やTUV **(ユ)** ➡ (A/a key) **(ュ)** ➡
0わをん 0わをん 0わをん **(ン)** ➡ (center key)



Symbols & Pictograms

May be unavailable depending on the entry mode.

1. (*絵/記号 key)

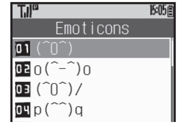


- Symbol/Pictogram Log appears.

2. (Y! key) **or** (mail key) ➡ **List toggles**
   - In Pictogram List, press (A/a key) to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
3. (navigation key) **Select Symbol or Pictogram** ➡ (center key)
   - Pictograms are double-byte even in single-byte modes.
4. (CLEAR/BACK key) ➡ **List closes**

Emoticons

1. (mail key) ➡ (navigation key) ***Emoticons*** ➡ (center key)



2. (navigation key) **Select emoticon** ➡ (center key)

Alternative Emoticon Entry Method

- In kanji (hiragana) mode, enter ***かお*** or a descriptive word such as ***わーい*** or ***うーん***, then convert the entry.

EmoticonWordLink

- Immediately after inserting a descriptive word such as ***嬉しい*** or ***悲しい***, corresponding emoticons may appear in the suggestion list.

2 Basic Operations

Advanced

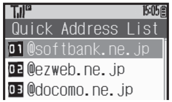
Inserting Phone Book Entry Items ● Undo Conversion or Recover Deleted Characters ● Changing Font Size (**P.2-24**)

● Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words ● Lowering type priorities in suggestion list (**P.12-6**)

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter *.co.jp*, *http://*, etc., easily.

1 ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Quick Address List*** ➡ ●



2 ◎ **Select extension** ➡ ●

- Extensions are single-byte even in double-byte entry modes.

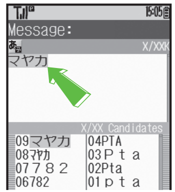
Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion

Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode.

Example: To enter ***PTA***

Use key inscriptions.

1 7 8 2 ➡ Y!



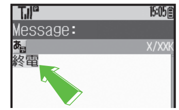
2 ◎ **Select word/phrase (*PTA*)** ➡ ●

Quick Conversion (for Hiragana)

A list of word suggestions appears based on the key pressed.

Example: To enter ***終電***

1 3 **(さ)** ➡ 8 **(や)** ➡ 1 **(あ)** ➡ 4 ✱ **(だ)** ➡ 0 **(わ)** ➡ ◎



2 ◎ **Select word/phrase (*終電*)** ➡ ●

One Hiragana Word Call

- Enter the first hiragana of entries you used Quick Conversion for and press ◎.

Editing Characters

Deleting & Editing

Follow these steps to correct ***また、お願いします*** to ***また明日お願いします***:

1 **Select character**



2 CLEAR/BACK



- The highlighted character is deleted.

3 **Select target location ➡ Enter characters**



Recovering Deleted Characters

- Press once for each character after deletion.

Deleting All Text

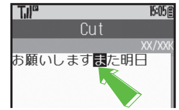
- Long Press CLEAR/BACK at the end of text. To delete characters on and after cursor, select the first character of text and Long Press CLEAR/BACK.

Jumping to the End or Top of Text

➡ ***Cursor Position*** ➡ ➡ ***Jump to End*** or ***Jump to Top*** ➡

Copy/Cut & Paste

1 ➡ ***Cut*** or ***Copy*** ➡ ➡ **Select first character** ➡



Cut

- To cancel and start over, press .

2 **Highlight text range** ➡

3 **Select target location** ➡ **(Long)**



- Text is entered.

Pasting Previously Cut/Copied Text

Select target location ➡ ➡ ***Paste*** ➡ ➡ **Select text** ➡

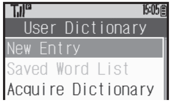
■ Available when Paste List appears.

Saving Frequently Used Words

Saving Words (Japanese)

Saved words appear among suggestions.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *User Dictionary* ➡ ●



User Dictionary Menu

2 *New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter word ➡ ●

3 Enter reading ➡ ●

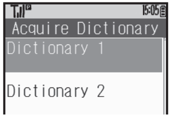
Editing Entries

In **2**, *Saved Word List* ➡ ● ➡ Select word ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ● ➡ Edit reading ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

830SH Download Dictionary (Japanese)

Download specialized 830SH Download Dictionaries from SH-web Mobile Internet site. Activate dictionaries to improve handset character conversion. Dictionary words appear among suggestions.
Some dictionary files may not be usable.

1 In User Dictionary menu, *Acquire Dictionary* ➡ ●



2 Select number ➡ ● ➡ Select dictionary ➡ ●

- Existing dictionary is replaced.

Canceling Dictionary

In **2**, (select dictionary) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Cancel* ➡ ●

Viewing Dictionary Information

In **2**, (select dictionary) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Info* ➡ ●

Advanced

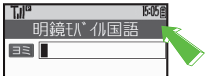
Deleting Entries (**P.2-24**)

Using Dictionaries

830SH is preloaded with these dictionaries:
- Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary
- Genius Mobile EJ Dictionary
- Genius Mobile JE Dictionary

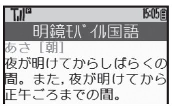
Searching As-You-Type

1. (辞書)



Dictionary Window

2. **Enter reading (spelling for English-Japanese dictionary)**
   - Search results appear as you type.
3. ↕ **Select word** ➡ ◉

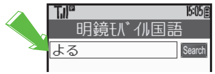


Definition/Translation Window

Using Dictionaries during Text Entry
In a text entry window, (辞書) (Long) ➡ From ❷

Searching by Keyword

1. (辞書) ➡ ✉
2. ↕ ***Search Method*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ↕ ***Keyword Search*** ➡ ◉
3. ↔ **Select entry field** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ◉



4. ↔ ***Search*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ↕ **Select word** ➡ ◉

Switching Dictionaries

1. **In Dictionary window, (Y!)**
2. ↕ **Select dictionary** ➡ ◉
   - Last used dictionary appears first.

Saving Bookmarks

1. **In definition/translation window, ✉**
2. ↕ ***Bookmark*** ➡ ◉

Opening Bookmarks
[Dictionary Window] ✉ ➡ ↕ *Bookmark List* ➡ ◉ ➡ ↕ Select word ➡ ◉

Adding Downloaded Dictionary

1. (辞書) ➡ ✉
2. ↕ ***Add Dictionary*** ➡ ◉
3. ↕ **Select file** ➡ ◉

Canceling Added Dictionary
In ❷, ↕ *Cancel Dictionary* ➡ ◉ ➡ ↕ *Yes* ➡ ◉

Advanced

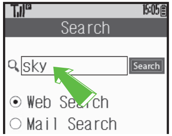
Copying Index Word / Opening Log (**P.2-24**)

2 Basic Operations

Searching Text

Web Search

1. ● ➡ ✥ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec. Tools*
2. ✥ *Search* ➡ ●
3. ✥ Select entry field ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●



Search Window

4. ✥ *Search* ➡ ●
   - Search results appear.

Searching within PC Sites
[Search Window] ✉ ➡ ✥ *Change Browser* ➡ ● ➡ ✥ *PC Site Browser* ➡ ●

Mail Search

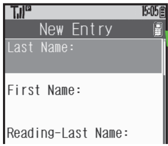
1. In Search window, ✥ *Mail Search* ➡ ●
2. ✥ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ ✥ Select option ➡ ●

Searching within Received or Sent Messages
[Search Window] ✉ ➡ ✥ *Change Mail Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ✥ *Received Messages* or *Sent Messages* ➡ ●

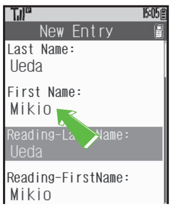
Creating Phone Book Entries

Enter a name, phone number and mail address (enter at least one of these items) and classify the entry.

1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Phone*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Add New Entry*** ➡ ●

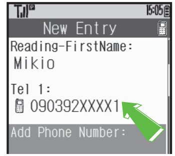


2 ◎ ***Last Name:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter last name** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***First Name:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter first name** ➡ ●



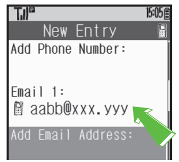
- Characters entered for names (reading for kanji) appear.

3 ◎ ***Add Phone Number:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter phone number** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select type** ➡ ●



- To save additional phone numbers, repeat **3**.

4 ◎ ***Add Email Address:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter mail address** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select type** ➡ ●



- To save additional mail addresses, repeat **4**.

5 ◎ ***Category:*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select Category** ➡ ●



Phone Book Entry Window

6 Y!

- Entry is saved to Phone Book.

Incoming Calls while Creating Entry

- Contents are temporarily saved. End the call to return.

Phone Book Memory Status

● ➡ ✣ ***Phone*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Manage Entries*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Memory Status*** ➡ ●

Advanced

Saving Other Information (**P.2-25**)

Personal Ringtone

Set tone for calls from saved numbers.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, ↕ (select item, e.g., *Tone-Voice Call:*) ➡ ●**



2 **↕ *Assign Tone* ➡ ● ➡ ↕ Select folder ➡ ●**

3 **⊕ Select tone/file ➡ ●**

Saving Secret Entries

Restrict access to Phone Book entries by saving them as Secret entries.

1 **In Phone Book entry window, ↕ *Secret:* ➡ ●**

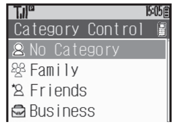
2 **↕ *On* ➡ ●**

Accessing Secret Entries

↕ ➡ ✉ ➡ ↕ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Customizing Response by Category

1 **● ➡ ⊕ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ ↕ *Category Control* ➡ ●**



Category Control Menu

2 **↕ Select Category ➡ ✉ ➡ ↕ Select item ➡ ●**

3 **↕ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Customize responses ➡ Y!**

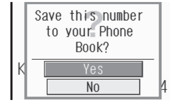
- Customize responses in the same way as Phone Book entries.
- Not available for USIM Card.

Responses Set by Phone Book Entry

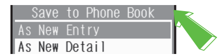
- Settings for each entry take priority.

Saving Numbers After Calls

After a call, save number to Phone Book.



1 **When confirmation appears, ↕ *Yes* ➡ ●**



2 **↕ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ Y!**

Saving to an Existing Entry

In 2, ↕ *As New Detail* ➡ ● ➡ ⊕ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ Y!

Advanced

Changing Vibration Pattern · Setting Incoming Mail Ring Time · Assigning Images to Phone Book Entries for Incoming Transmissions (**P.2-25**)

Changing default storage media for new entries · Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers (**P.12-6**)

Using Phone Book Entries

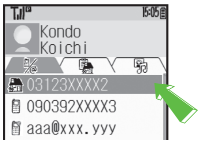
Dialing via Phone Book

1 ➡ Specify katakana row



Entry Search Window (By a-ka-sa-ta-na)

2 Select entry ➡



Entry Details

3 Select phone number

4

Using Other Options
After 3, ➡ Select option ➡

Changing Search Method

1 In entry search window, ➡ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡

2 *Sort Entries* ➡



3 Select method ➡

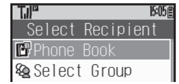
- Phone Book Search Methods:

By Reading	Shows all entries in Reading order (katakana, alphabetical then numerical)
By Category	Opens entries in the specified Category
By a-ka-sa-ta-na	Shows entries with Readings that start with katakana in the specified row

Changing Search Method Temporarily
[Entry Search Window] (press repeatedly to toggle search methods)

Opening from Other Functions

Example: Enter a recipient via Phone Book when sending a message.



Select Recipient Window

1 *Phone Book* ➡

- Entry search window opens.

2 Select entry ➡

3 Select phone number or mail address ➡



- Recipient is entered.
- Omit 3 if only one number or address is saved.

2 Basic Operations

Advanced

Messaging via Phone Book ●Editing Phone Book Entries ●Deleting Phone Book Entries ●Renaming Categories ●Moving Categories (**P.2-26**)

●Switching reference Phone Book (**P.12-6**)

Data Folder

Handset files are organized in folders by file format.

■ Preset Folders

	Contents
Pictures*	Still images
DCIM	Large still images on Memory Card (images captured with save location set to ***SD(DCIM)***)
Ring Songs·Tones*	Downloaded melodies and other sound files
S! Appli*	S! Applications
Music*	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® files
Videos*	Video images
Lifestyle-Appli*	Lifestyle-Appli required to use Osaifu-Keitai®
Books*	Downloaded e-Books, etc.
Customized Screen*	Downloaded Customized Screen files
Status Templates	Combinations of Status Icon and Status Label for S! Friend's Status
Flash®	Downloaded Flash® (animation) files
Other Documents	Other files (Dictionary files, etc.)

*Contains corresponding Yahoo! Keitai menu shortcut.

Memory Status

- Delete messages/files when memory is low. Handset performance may be affected when memory is full.
  ● ➡ ✣ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ● ➡ ◊ ***Memory Status*** ➡ ● ➡ ◊ ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card*** ➡ ●

Opening Files

1 ● ➡ Data Folder ➡ ●

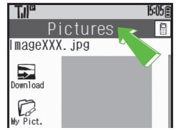


Data Folder

- Unselectable files/folders appear in gray.
- To show/hide sub folders, select a folder and press Y!.

2 Select folder ➡ ●

To open a sub folder, select it and press ●.



File List

3 Select file ➡ ●

- The content plays or appears.
- To return to file list, press CLEAR/BACK.

S! Mail Attachments

After 2, (select file) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message* ➡ ●

■ When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Switching File List View

After 1, ✉ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ *Change List View* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

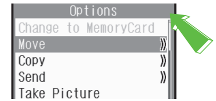
Copy Protected Files (or)

- Some functions may be unavailable.

Slide Show

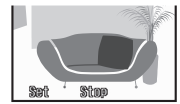
Available for Pictures or DCIM folder.

1 In file list, (select file) ➡ ✉



File Options Menu

2 *Slide Show* ➡ ●



Slide Show Window

3 ● ➡ Slide Show stops

Advanced

Using Files as Wallpaper Using Files as Ringtones (P.2-27)

Managing Files & Folders

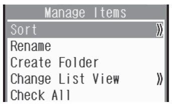
Adding Folders

May be unavailable for some folders.

1. ➡ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ➡ **Select folder** ➡

2. If ***Download*** is selected or folder is empty, skip ahead to 4.

3. ***Manage Items*** ➡



Manage Items Menu

4. ***Create Folder*** ➡ ➡ **Enter name** ➡

Renaming Folders

After 1, (select folder) ➡ ➡ *Manage Items* ➡ ➡ *Rename* ➡ ➡ Enter name ➡

- Assign different names to folders within a layer.

Moving Files

Some files may not be moved.

1. **In file list, (select file) ➡**

2. ***Move*** ➡ ➡ ***Phone*** **or** ***Memory Card*** ➡

3. **Select folder** ➡

4. ***Move here*** ➡

Copying Files

[File List] Select file ➡ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ➡ *Phone* or *Memory Card* ➡ ➡ *Copy here* ➡

Selecting Multiple Files

1. **In file list, (select file) ➡**
   - Repeat 1 as needed. (To uncheck, select a file with ☑ and press .)

Hiding Folders

Restrict access to created folders.
Only handset folders can be hidden.

1. **In file list, (select folder) ➡**

2. ***Set Secret*** ➡ ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡

Accessing Secret Folders

[File List] ➡ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡

Advanced

Renaming Files Sorting Files Canceling Secret Deleting Files & Folders (**P.2-27**)

Using Memory Card

Use microSD™/microSDHC™ Memory Card (hereafter "Memory Card") to save and organize files for use on 830SH.

Use recommended Memory Cards only. For details, see **P.13-21** "microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility."

Precautions

- Do not force Memory Card into or out of handset.
- Do not touch terminals or expose them to metal objects.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.

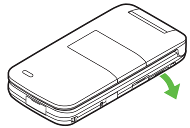
Important Memory Card Usage Notes

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while files are being accessed; do not subject to shocks/vibration or turn handset power off.
- Be careful not to erase or overwrite files accidentally.

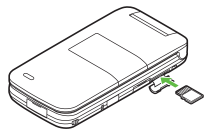
Inserting & Removing

Turn handset power off first.

1 Open cover

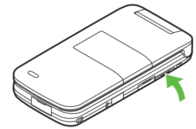


2 Insert card



- With terminal side up, insert card until it clicks.
- Do not insert other objects into Memory Card Slot.

3 Close cover

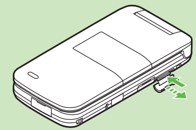


If [icon] Appears after Power On

- Memory Card may not be inserted properly; reinsert the card.

Removing Memory Card

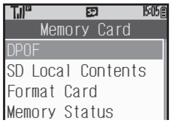
- Gently push in card and release it; card pops out. Pull card straight out gently.



Format Card

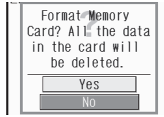
When using a new Memory Card for the first time, format it on the handset before trying to save files, etc. Format Card deletes all Memory Card files, even those created on other devices.

1. ● → *Settings* → ● → *Connectivity* → *Memory Card* → ●



2. *Format Card* → ● → *Yes* → ●
   - Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until format is complete.

3. **Enter Handset Code** → ●



4. *Yes* → ●
   - To cancel, choose ***No*** and press ●.

Precaution

- Never remove Memory Card or battery while formatting; may cause damage.

Opening Memory Card Files

1. ● → *Data Folder* → ●
2. ✉ → *Change to MemoryCard* → ●
   - Memory Card Data Folder opens.
3. **Select folder** → ●
4. **Select file** → ●

Display

Start Here → [Slide Show Wallpaper Menu] P.2-4 [Phone Settings Menu] P.2-2 [Customized Screen Menu] P.2-5

Standby Window

Changing Display Option

● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Standby Window* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Window* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

- For ***Always Off***, pressing in Standby opens Calendar.

Selecting Source Folder for Slide Show Wallpaper

[Slide Show Wallpaper Menu] *Folder Setting* ➡ ● ➡ *Pictures* or *DCIM* ➡ ● ➡ Select sub folder ➡ ● ➡ *Set this folder* ➡ ●

- For ***Pictures***, omit sub folder selection step.
- If there is no image in set folder, preset images appear.

Customized Screen & S! Familiar Usability

Applying Preset Customized Screen

[Phone Settings Menu] *Customize* ➡ ● ➡ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ *Preset Screens* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ ●

Canceling Customized Screen

● ➡ ✉ ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling S! Familiar Usability

● ➡ Y! ➡ *S!おなじみ操作解除* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Customized Screen or S! Familiar Usability Unconditionally

➡ *Main Menu* ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Customize* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Accessing Customized Screen Source Sites

[Customized Screen Menu] Select Customized Screen ➡ ✉ ➡ *Web Access* ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Text Entry

Start Here [Text Entry Window] P.2-7 [User Dictionary Menu] P.2-12 [Definition/Translation Window] P.2-13

Character Entry

Inserting Line Breaks

■ At the End of Text

[Text Entry Window]

■ Mid-Entry

[Text Entry Window] → (in kanji (hiragana) mode, → →)

Inserting Spaces

[Text Entry Window]

Using Character Codes

[Text Entry Window] In Character Code mode, enter four digits (P.13-12)

Using Pager Code

[Text Entry Window] → *Input/Conversion* → → *Input Method* → → *Pager Code* →

- Return to text entry window and enter two digits (**P.13-11**).

Clearing Entry Log

[Text Entry Window] → *Input/Conversion* → → *Reset Log* → → *Yes* →

Inserting Phone Book Entry Items

[Text Entry Window] → *Insert/Font Size* → → *Phone Book* → → Select entry or *My Details* → → Select item →

Undo Conversion or Recover Deleted Characters

[Text Entry Window] → *Undo/Recover* →

Changing Font Size

[Text Entry Window] → *Insert/Font Size* → → *Font Size* → → Select size →

User Dictionary

Deleting Entries

[User Dictionary Menu] *Saved Word List* → → Select word → → *Yes* →

Dictionary

Copying Index Word

[Definition/Translation Window] → *Copy Index Word* →

Opening Log

→ → *History* → → Select word →

Phone Book Entry Items

Start Here [Phone Book Entry Window] P.2-15

Phone Book Entry

Changing Vibration Pattern

[Phone Book Entry Window] Select item, e.g., *Vibration-Message:* ➡ ● ➡ Switch *On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ● ➡ *Vibration Pattern* ➡ ● ➡ Select pattern ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK

Saving Other Information

■ Address

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Address:* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Complete field ➡ ● ➡ Y!

■ Office

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Office:* ➡ ● ➡ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ Y!

■ Homepage

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Homepage:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter URL ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●

■ Note

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Note:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

■ Birthday

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Birthday:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date ➡ ●

Setting Incoming Mail Ring Time

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Tone-New Message:* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Enter time ➡ ●

- Available for compatible ringtones.

Assigning Images to Phone Book Entries for Incoming Transmissions

[Phone Book Entry Window] *Picture:* ➡ ● ➡ *Assign Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ●

Phone Book Entries

Start Here → [Entry Details] P.2-17 [Entry Search Window] P.2-17 [Category Control Menu] P.2-16

Using Entries

Messaging via Phone Book

Phone Numbers

[Entry Details] Select number → → *Create Message* → → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → → Complete message →

Mail Addresses

[Entry Details] Select address → → Complete message →

Managing Entries

Editing Phone Book Entries

[Entry Search Window] Select entry → → *Edit* → → Select item → → Edit → →

- Edit Reading after editing names.

Deleting Phone Book Entries

One Entry

[Entry Search Window] Select entry → → *Delete* → → *Yes* →

All Entries

→ *Phone* → → *Manage Entries* → → *Delete All* → → Select entry type → → *Yes* → → Enter Handset Code →

Renaming Categories

[Category Control Menu] Select Category → → *Edit Name* → → Enter name →

Moving Categories

[Category Control Menu] Select Category → → Select target location →

- View for ***By Category*** Phone Book search changes accordingly.

Data Folder Contents

Start Here ➡ [File Options Menu] P.2-19 [File List] P.2-19 [Manage Items Menu] P.2-20

Handling Files

Using Files as Wallpaper

[File Options Menu] ◎ *Set as Wallpaper* ➡ ● ➡ ●

- For images smaller or larger than Display, select an option and press ●.
- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Using Files as Ringtones

[File List] ◎ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Set as Ringtone* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select item ➡ ●

- When prompted, enter ring time and press ●.
- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen instructions.

Managing Files/Folders

Renaming Files

[File List] ◎ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Manage Items* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Sorting Files

[Manage Items Menu] ◎ *Sort* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select method ➡ ●

- To reverse the order, sort by the same method again.

Canceling Secret

Unlock Secret folders temporarily and ◎ (select Secret folder) ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Unset Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Deleting Files & Folders

Single Files

[File List] ◎ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Folder & Files Within

[File List] ◎ Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

3

Calling

Voice Calling

Answering a Voice Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Voice Call Window

1. to accept the call
   - Call connects.
2. ➡ **Call ends**

Muting Ringer Temporarily

[Incoming Voice Call Window] CLEAR/BACK

After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Voice Call

1. **Enter phone number with area code**
2.



Voice Call Window

- Handset dials the number.

3. ➡ **Call ends**

Correcting Numbers

In ❶, (place cursor under the digit) ➡ CLEAR/BACK

- Long Press CLEAR/BACK to delete the digits above and after the cursor.

Earpiece Volume

During a call, or

Placing an International Call

Apply for International Call Service beforehand.

1. **Enter phone number with area code ➡**
2. ***Int'l Call*** ➡



Country Code List

3. **Select country** ➡ ➡
   - Handset dials the number.
4. ➡ **Call ends**

Calling Unlisted Countries

In ❸, *Enter Code* ➡ ➡ Enter country code ➡ ➡

Advanced

Rejecting Calls · Placing Calls on Hold · Answering with Headphones · Adjusting Earpiece Volume · Muting Microphone · Recording Caller Voice · Using Speaker Phone (**P.3-10** - **3-11**)

Setting handset to beep once each minute during Voice Calls · Showing Call Cost after each call · Hiding Call Time during calls (**P.12-7**)

Placing Calls while Abroad

See below to place a call to Japan from abroad. Apply for Global Roaming beforehand.
http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/global_service/

1. **Enter phone number with area code ➡ ✉**
2. ⇕ ***Int'l Call*** ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ ***日本(JPN)*** ➡ ● ➡
   - Handset dials the number.
3. ➡ **Call ends**

Calling SoftBank Handsets
- In ❷, always select ⇕ ***日本(JPN)***.

Calling Landlines & Mobiles within the Same Country
- Perform steps in "Placing a Voice Call" on **P.3-2**.

Calls Overseas
- Calling may not be possible outside Japan. Connections depend on available network, signal strength, and handset settings.

Answer Phone

Record caller messages on handset. Answer Phone cannot be used when handset is off or out-of-range. Use Voicemail to record caller messages when Answer Phone is not available.

1. CLEAR/BACK **(Long)**



- Answer Phone is set.

Canceling Answer Phone
CLEAR/BACK **(Long)**

Answering Calls while Recording
- No message will be recorded.

Playing Messages

1. CLEAR/BACK
   - Playback ends automatically after all messages have played.

Playback Operations

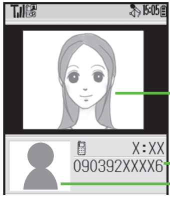
Volume Control	⇕ or ◀▶
Replay/ Skip Backward	◐
Stop	CLEAR/BACK
Skip Forward	● or ◑
Delete	✉ ➡ ⇕ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Advanced

Recording Caller Messages (Answer Phone) (**P.3-10**)

Video Calling

View the other party's image or send an Outgoing Image to compatible handsets. Use External Camera to send your image.



Important Video Call Usage Notes

- If both parties are using handset models without internal cameras, Video Call cannot be used as intended.
- If both parties are not using the same Video Call system, call may be interrupted. (Video Call charges apply.)

Answering a Video Call

Incoming Call window opens for a call.



Incoming Video Call Window

1 **to accept the call**

- Alternative Image is sent.

2 ➡ **Call ends**

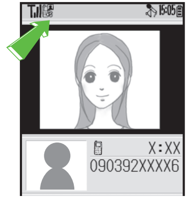
Answering with External Camera Image
[Incoming Video Call Window] ➡ ***No*** ➡

After Calls to/from Unsaved Numbers

- Save to Phone Book confirmation appears.

Placing a Video Call

1 ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ➡ **Select phone number** ➡ ➡ ***Video Call*** ➡



Video Call Window

- Call is accepted and image appears.

2 ➡ **Call ends**

Viewing Engaged Video Call Operations
After 1, ➡ ***Help*** ➡

Toggling Camera/Alternative Image
After 1,

Advanced

Rejecting Calls · Placing Calls on Hold · Answering with Headphones · Answering Video Calls Automatically · Adjusting Earpiece Volume · Muting Microphone · Canceling Speaker Output (**P.3-10** - **3-11**)

Showing Call Cost after each call · Hiding Call Time during calls · Changing Alternative Image · Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images · Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls (**P.12-7**)

Speed Dial

Saving Phone Numbers

Save phone numbers to Speed Dial/Mail list for easy dialing.

1. ● ➡ ◈ ***Phone*** ➡ ●
2. ◈ ***Speed Dial/Mail*** ➡ ●
3. ◈ **Select number** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ **Select entry** ➡ ●
4. ◈ **Select phone number** ➡ ●
   - Select mail address prompt appears.



5. ◈ ***Do not Assign*** ➡ ●
   To save mail address instead, select one and press ●.
6. Y! ➡ **Saved**
   - To save additional phone numbers, repeat 3 - 6.

Using Headphones for Speed Dial
- Save a phone number to 0.

Canceling Speed Dial Entries

In 3, ◈ **(select entry)** ➡ ✉ ➡ ◈ ***Remove Selected*** **or** ***Remove All*** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

- Omit entry selection step when canceling all entries.

Using Speed Dial

1. 0 - 9 9 **(entry number)**
2. Call key

Placing Video Calls

In 2, ● ➡ ◈ ***Speed Video*** ➡ ●

Using Headphones
- In Standby, Long Press Call Button until a double beep sounds; handset dials the number saved in 0. To end the call, Long Press Call Button until a beep sounds.

Call Log

Open recent dialed/received call records.

1



All Calls Window

- All Calls opens; press to open Dialed Numbers, Dialed Frequency and then Received Calls.

2 **Select record ➡**

When the Same Number is Dialed More Than Once Using the Same Call Option

- Only the last record appears. (All records appear for S! Circle Talk.)

Advanced

Dialing from Call Log Records · Sending Messages · Saving Phone Book Entries · Deleting Call Log Records (**P.3-11**)

Call Time & Call Cost

Call Time

Check estimated time of the most recent call and all calls.

1. → ***Settings*** → → ***Call/Video Call***
2. ***Call Time & Cost*** →



Call Time & Cost Menu

3. ***Call Timers*** →



Call Timers Menu

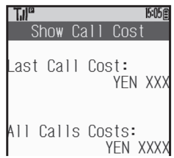
4. ***Dialed Calls*** or ***Received Calls*** →

Call Cost

Check estimated call charges of the most recent call and all calls.

Call Costs (including Max Cost) may be unavailable depending on subscription status.

1. **In Call Time & Cost menu,** ***Call Costs*** →
2. ***Show Call Cost*** →



Show Call Cost Window

Advanced

- Resetting Call Timers - Resetting Call Costs (**P.3-12**)
- Checking the most recent packet transmission volume - Checking all packet transmission volume (**P.12-7**)

Optional Services

Call Forwarding and Voicemail can only be set simultaneously when Call Forwarding is set to Video Calls.

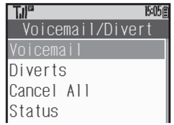
Call Forwarding	Automatically divert all or all unanswered incoming calls to another preset phone number
Voicemail	Redirect all or unanswered calls to Voicemail Center; access messages from handset/touchtone phones
Call Waiting*	Answer incoming calls or open another line during a call
Group Calling*	Switch between open lines or connect multiple lines at once for teleconferencing
Call Barring	Restrict incoming/outgoing calls depending on conditions
Caller ID	Show or hide your own number when placing calls

*A separate contract is required.

Initiating Call Forwarding

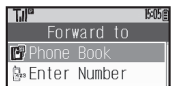
Follow these steps to divert calls to a phone number saved in Phone Book after selected ring time (***No Answer*** set):

1. ● ➡ ✥ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ↔ ***Call/Video Call***
2. ↕ ***Voicemail/Divert*** ➡ ●



Voicemail/Divert Menu

3. ↕ ***Diverts*** ➡ ● ➡ ↕ **Select call type** ➡ ●
4. ↕ ***No Answer*** ➡ ●



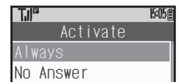
5. ↕ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ● ➡ ✥ **Select entry** ➡ ●
6. ↕ **Select phone number** ➡ ●
   - Omit 6 if only one number is saved.
7. ●
8. ↕ **Select ring time** ➡ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In 4, ↕ *Always* ➡ ● ➡ 5 - 7
Entering Forwarding Number Directly
In 5, ↕ *Enter Number* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ ↕ Select ring time ➡ ●

Initiating Voicemail

Follow these steps to divert calls to Voicemail Center after selected ring time (***No Answer*** set):

1. **In Voicemail/Divert menu,** ↕ ***Voicemail*** ➡ ● ➡ ↕ ***Activate*** ➡ ●



2. ↕ ***No Answer*** ➡ ● ➡ ↕ **Select ring time** ➡ ●

Diverting Calls without Handset Response
In 2, ↕ *Always* ➡ ●

Advanced

Checking Service Status (**P.3-12**)

Missed Call Notification

Activate this function for records of calls missed while handset is off/out-of-range and Voicemail is active.

1 ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Call/Video Call*



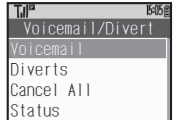
Call/Video Call Menu

2 out *Missed Calls* ➡ ● ➡ ●

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Playing Messages

1 **In Call/Video Call menu,** *Voicemail/Divert* ➡ ●



Voicemail/Divert Menu

2 *Voicemail* ➡ ●

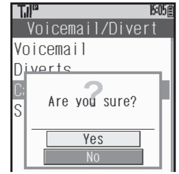
3 *Call Voicemail* ➡ ●

- Follow the voice guidance for further operations.

Hiding New Voicemail Message Indicator
In 3, *Delete Icon* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling Call Forwarding/Voicemail

1 **In Voicemail/Divert menu,** *Cancel All* ➡ ●



2 *Yes* ➡ ●

3 Calling

Advanced

[Call Waiting (Separate Contract Required)]
● Activating Call Waiting ● Placing Line 1 on Hold to Answer Line 2 (**P.3-12**)

[Group Calling (Separate Contract Required)]
● Opening Another Line during a Call ● Switching Between Open Lines (Swap Calls) ● Talking on Multiple Lines Simultaneously (**P.3-12**)

[Call Barring]
● Rejecting Calls by Number ● Rejecting Calls without Designating Numbers ● Changing Network Password (**P.3-13**)

[Caller ID]
● Showing/Hiding Caller ID (**P.3-13**)

Additional Functions 1

Start Here ➔ [Incoming Call Window] Voice Call: P.3-2, Video Call: P.3-4 [Call/Video Call Menu] P.3-9 [Call Window] Voice Call: P.3-2, Video Call: P.3-4

Receiving a Voice Call/Video Call

Rejecting Calls

[Incoming Call Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Reject* ➔ ●

Placing Calls on Hold

[Incoming Call Window] ☎

- Press ↩ to answer the call on hold.

Answering with Headphones

[Incoming Call Window] Long Press Call Button

- To end the call, Long Press Call Button.

Recording Caller Messages (Answer Phone)

[Incoming Voice Call Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Record Message* ➔ ●

Answering Video Calls Automatically

■ Saving Numbers to Auto Answer List

[Call/Video Call Menu] ◎ *Video Call* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Remote Monitor* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Auto Answer List* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *<Empty>* ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *Change* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *From Phone Book* or *From Call Log* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select entry ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select phone number ➔ ●

- For ***From Call Log***, omit entry selection step.
- To enter a phone number directly, select ***<Empty>*** and press ●.

■ Activating Remote Monitor

[Call/Video Call Menu] ◎ *Video Call* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Remote Monitor* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Switch On/Off* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *On* ➔ ● ➔ ●

- A tone sounds for calls answered via Remote Monitor. (Tone and volume are fixed.)
- Remote Monitor is effective only when handset is open.

Placing a Voice Call/Video Call

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

● ➔ ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ In Phone Settings menu, ◎ *Earpiece Volume* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Adjust level ➔ ●

Call Window Operations

Muting Microphone

[Call Window] Y!

- To cancel, press Y!.

Additional Functions 2

Start Here ➜ [Call Window] Voice Call: P.3-2, Video Call: P.3-4 [All Calls Window] P.3-6

Voice Call

Recording Caller Voice

[Voice Call Window] ✉ ➜ ◎ *Record Caller Voice* ➜ ● ➜ Recording starts ➜ ● ➜ Recording ends

- To play recorded messages, see **P.3-3** "Playing Messages."

Using Speaker Phone

[Voice Call Window] ● ➜ While message appears, ●

- To cancel, press ●.

Video Call

Canceling Speaker Output

[Video Call Window] ✉ ➜ ◎ *Loudspeaker Off* ➜ ●

- To activate Speaker, select ***Loudspeaker On***.

Call Log

Dialing from Call Log Records

Calling Previously Dialed Numbers (Redial)

◎ ➜ ◎ Select record ➜ ☎

Calling from Received Call Records

◎ ➜ ◎ Select record ➜ ☎

- To place Video Calls, press ✉ instead of ☎, then select ***Video Call*** and press ●.

Sending Messages

[All Calls Window] ◎ Select record ➜ ✉ ➜ ◎ *Create Message* ➜ ● ➜ ◎ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➜ ● ➜ Complete message ➜ Y!

Saving Phone Book Entries

[All Calls Window] ◎ Select record ➜ ✉ ➜ ◎ *Save to Phone Book* ➜ ● ➜ ◎ *As New Entry* ➜ ● ➜ Complete other fields ➜ Y!

- To add to an existing entry, select ***As New Detail***.

Deleting Call Log Records

One Record

[All Calls Window] ◎ Select record ➜ ✉ ➜ ◎ *Delete* ➜ ● ➜ ◎ *Yes* ➜ ●

All Records

[All Calls Window] ✉ ➜ ◎ *Delete All* ➜ ● ➜ Enter Handset Code ➜ ● ➜ ◎ *Yes* ➜ ●

Additional Functions 3

Start Here → [Call Timers Menu] P.3-7 [Show Call Cost Window] P.3-7 [Call/Video Call Menu] P.3-9 [Voice Call Window] P.3-2

Call Time & Call Cost

Resetting Call Timers

[Call Timers Menu] ◎ *Clear Timers* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Resetting Call Costs

[Show Call Cost Window] ✉ ➡ Enter PIN2 ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Optional Services

Service Status

Checking Service Status

[Call/Video Call Menu] ◎ Select service ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Status* ➡ ●

- For ***Call Barring***, select restriction and press ●.

Call Waiting (Contract Required)

Activating Call Waiting

[Call/Video Call Menu] ◎ *Call Waiting* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ●

Placing Line 1 on Hold to Answer Line 2

[Voice Call Window] A tone sounds ➡ [Send]

- Press [Send] to switch between lines.
- Press [End] to end active line and re-engage the party on hold.

Group Calling (Contract Required)

Opening Another Line during a Call

[Voice Call Window] Enter phone number ➡ [Send]

- Long Press [Send] to select a number from Call Log.

Switching Between Open Lines (Swap Calls)

[Voice Call Window] [Send]

- Press [Send] to switch between lines.

Talking on Multiple Lines Simultaneously

[Voice Call Window] While switching between lines, ✉ ➡ ◎ *Group Calling* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Conference All* ➡ ●

Additional Functions 4

Start Here ➔ [Call/Video Call Menu] P.3-9

Call Barring

Rejecting Calls by Number

Saving Phone Numbers

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Rejected Numbers* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Black List* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Set Reject Number* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *<Empty>* ➔ ● ➔ Enter phone number ➔ ●

- Activate Black List to reject calls from saved phone numbers.

Activating Black List

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Rejected Numbers* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Black List* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Switch On/Off* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *On* ➔ ●

Rejecting Calls without Designating Numbers

Calls from Unsaved Numbers

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Rejected Numbers* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Unknown* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *On* ➔ ●

Calls without Caller ID

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Rejected Numbers* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Withheld* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *On* ➔ ●

Calls from Public Phones

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Rejected Numbers* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Payphone* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *On* ➔ ●

Calls with Undisplayable Caller ID

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Rejected Numbers* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Unavailable* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *On* ➔ ●

Changing Network Password

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Call Barring* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *Change NW Password* ➔ ● ➔ Enter current Network Password ➔ ● ➔ Enter new Network Password ➔ ● ➔ Re-enter new Network Password ➔ ●

Caller ID

Showing/Hiding Caller ID

[Call/Video Call Menu] ⓢ *Show My Number* ➔ ● ➔ ⓢ *On* or *Off* ➔ ●

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with SoftBank 3G handsets. (Emergency Location Report)
830SH reports Location Information based on positioning signals from radio stations.

- Registration/transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location/signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with ***184***). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

Handset Restrictions & Emergency Calls

Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

Active Restriction	Emergency Calls
Max Cost	Possible
Function Lock (P.10-2)	
Outgoing Calls	
Offline Mode (P.1-15)	Restricted
Keypad Lock (P.1-13)	
PIN Entry (P.10-2)	

4 Messaging

Basics

Use the following messaging services.

SMS

Exchange up to 160 alphanumerics with SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail

Exchange up to 30,000 characters with e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc; attach media files, etc.

Send Graphic Mail; set Feeling Setting in subject field when messaging SoftBank handsets.

PC Mail

Receive or reply to PC mail account messages. Use 830SH to handle PC Mail messages like SMS or S! Mail.

■ Available Entry Items

	Recipient	Subject	Message	Attachment
SMS	Available*	N/A	Available	N/A
S! Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available
PC Mail	Available	Available	Available	Available

*SoftBank handset numbers only.

- A separate contract is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail from PCs, etc.
- For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.13-21**).

Auto Retry Function

If recipient's handset is off/out-of-range, a sent message is saved in Server Mail Box and delivery attempted at regular intervals. (Undeliverable messages are deleted.)

Auto Resend

When Auto Resend is active, handset automatically resends unsent messages up to two times. Cancel to disable (**P.12-8**).

Customizing Handset Address

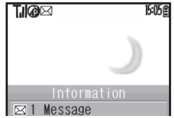
Change alphanumerics before @ of the default handset mail address.
For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.13-21**).

Changing Address

1. ➡ ***Settings*** ➡
2. ***Address Settings*** ➡
   - Handset connects to the Internet. Select ***English*** and press , then follow onscreen instructions.

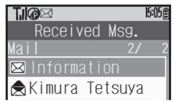
Saving Address

When handset address is changed, SoftBank sends new address confirmation via S! Mail.



To save new address to My Details, follow these steps. (New address is effective even if not saved.)

1. ***Message*** ➡



2. ***Information*** ➡



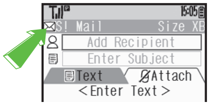
3. ***Yes*** ➡
4.

Sending S! Mail

Follow these steps to send S! Mail to a number/address saved in Phone Book:

1 ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Create Message*** ➡ ●

When a PC Mail Account exists, select ***S! Mail*** and press ●.



S! Mail Composition Window

2 ◎ **Select recipient field** ➡ ●

3 ◎ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ●

4 ◎ **Select recipient** ➡ ●

5 ◎ **Select number or mail address** ➡ ●

- Omit 5 if only one number or address is saved.
- When a mail address is entered, do not use single-byte katakana in message text or subject.

6 ◎ **Select subject field** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter subject** ➡ ●

7 ◎ ***Text*** ➡ ●



Text Entry Window

8 **Enter message** ➡ ●



S! Mail Composition Window

9 Y! ➡ **Transmission starts**

- To cancel, press Y! during transmission.

Incoming Calls while Creating Message

- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

Previewing Outgoing Message

After 8, ✉ ➡ ◎ *Preview Message* ➡ ●

Pictogram Entry

- In Pictogram List, press A/a to toggle cross-carrier Pictograms and all Pictograms.
- Pictogram appearance may differ by carrier.

Advanced

Using Other Recipient Entry Methods ● Adding Recipients ● Inserting Signature Automatically ● Speed Dial/Mail List ● Saving without Sending ● Auto Send when Signal Returns ● Designating Send Date/Time (within one week) ● Canceling Sent S! Mail ● Requesting Delivery Confirmation (**P.4-8** - **4-9**)

Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages (**P.12-8**)

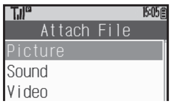
Attaching Files

Send attachments to compatible handsets. Follow these steps to attach images to S! Mail:

1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ◉ *Attach*



2 ◉ *Attach File* ➡ ●



3 ◉ *Picture* ➡ ● ➡ ◉ Select folder ➡ ●

4 ◉ Select file ➡ ●

When a size list appears, select attachment size and press ●.



Attach File Window

- Repeat 2 - 4 to attach more files.

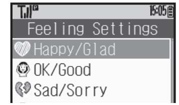
5 Y! ➡ Transmission starts

Attaching Non-Image Files

- In 3, select a folder other than ***Picture*** and press ●, then select a file.

Sending Feeling Mail

1 In S! Mail Composition window after composing message, ✉ ➡ ◉ *Feeling Settings* ➡ ●



2 ◉ Select category, e.g., *Happy/Glad* ➡ ●

3 ◉ Select item, e.g., *I Love You* ➡ ●



4 Y! ➡ Transmission starts

Canceling Feeling Mail

[S! Mail Composition Window] ◉ Select subject field ➡ ● ➡ ◉ Select Pictogram, e.g., ✎ ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ ●

Advanced

Set Auto Play File (**P.4-9**)

Sending Graphic Mail

Follow these steps to:

- Change font size and background color
- Insert images and My Pictograms
- Scroll text

1 **In text entry window, (Long)**

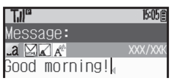


Graphic Mail Window

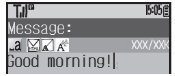
2 ***Font Size:*** **→ ●**



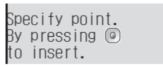
3 **Select size → ● → Enter text**



4 **Y! → *BG Color:* → ● → Select color → ●**



5 **Y! → *Picture* → ● → Select folder → ● → Select file → ●**

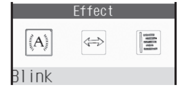


6 **Select location → ● → CLEAR/BACK**

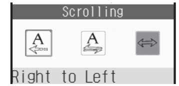
7 **Y! → *My Pictogram* → ● → ✉ → Select file → ● → CLEAR/BACK**



8 **Y! → *Effect* → ●**



9 ***Scrolling*** **→ ●**



10 **Select direction → ● → Enter text**

11 **● → Y! → Transmission starts**

Canceling Last Action
[Graphic Mail Window] ***Undo*** **→ ●**

Cancelling All Graphic Mail Settings
[Graphic Mail Window] ***Cancel*** **→ ● →** ***Yes*** **→ ●**

Saving as Templates
After 10, ● → ✉ → ***Save as Template*** **→ ● → Enter name → ● →** ***Save here*** **→ ●**

■ Only the message text is saved.

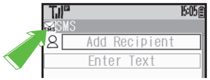
Advanced

●Creating Graphic Mail from Templates ●Changing Text Color, Size & Effect (**P.4-9**)

Sending SMS

Follow these steps to send SMS to a number saved in Phone Book:

1 ➡ ***Create New SMS*** ➡ ●



SMS Composition Window

2 **Select recipient field** ➡ ●

3 ***Phone Book*** ➡ ●

4 **Select recipient** ➡ ●

5 **Select number** ➡ ●



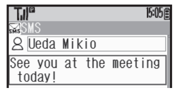
- Omit 5 if only one number is saved.

6 **Select message text field** ➡ ●



Text Entry Window

7 **Enter message** ➡ ●



SMS Composition Window

8 ➡ **Transmission starts**

Incoming Calls while Creating Message
- Content is saved temporarily. End the call to return.

When Message Text Exceeds Limit
- A confirmation appears. To convert SMS to S! Mail, follow these steps:
  Yes ➡ ●

Advanced

Using Other Recipient Entry Methods / Adding Recipients / Speed Dial/Mail List / Saving without Sending / Auto Send when Signal Returns / Designating Send Date/Time (within one week) / Requesting Delivery Confirmation (**P.4-8** - **4-9**)

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages / Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages / Changing Server sent message storage limit (**P.12-8** - **12-9**)

Messaging 1

Start Here ➔ [Composition Window] S! Mail: P.4-4, SMS: P.4-7

Creating Messages

Using Other Recipient Entry Methods

[Composition Window] Select recipient field ➔ ● ➔ Select method ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ●

Adding Recipients

[Composition Window] Select recipient field ➔ ● ➔ *Add Recipient* ➔ ● ➔ Select method ➔ ● ➔ Select/enter number/address ➔ ● ➔ Y!

Inserting Signature Automatically

✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *S! Mail Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Signature Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Edit* ➔ ● ➔ Enter signature ➔ ● ➔ *Auto Insert* ➔ ● ➔ *On* ➔ ●

- Signature is inserted above message text when forwarding messages or quoting original message text in replies.
- Not available for SMS.

Speed Dial/Mail List

Saving Recipients

✉ ➔ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ *Speed Dial/Mail* ➔ ● ➔ *<Empty>* ➔ ● ➔ Select Phone Book entry ➔ ● ➔ Select number or mail address ➔ ● ➔ *Do not Assign* ➔ ● ➔ Y!

Creating Messages

In Standby, 0 - 9 9 (Speed Dial/Mail entry number) ➔ ✉

- When messaging to SoftBank handset numbers, select ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** and press ●.

Sending Messages

Saving without Sending

[Composition Window] ✉ ➔ *Save to Drafts* ➔ ●

Auto Send when Signal Returns

[Composition Window] ✉ ➔ *Send Reservation* ➔ ● ➔ *Within the Network* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

Designating Send Date/Time (within one week)

[Composition Window] ✉ ➔ *Send Reservation* ➔ ● ➔ *Date & Time* ➔ ● ➔ Enter date/time ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

Canceling Sent S! Mail

✉ ➔ *Sent Messages* ➔ ● ➔ Select folder ➔ ● ➔ Select message ➔ ✉ ➔ *Set Sent Cancel* ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●

- Available for messages sent to SoftBank handsets.

Messaging 2

Start Here [Composition Window] S! Mail: P.4-4, SMS: P.4-7 [Attach File Window] P.4-5 [S! Mail Composition Window] P.4-4 [Graphic Mail Window] P.4-6

Requesting Delivery Confirmation

[Composition Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Messaging Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ●

- Delivery Report arrives when message is delivered.
- Not available for PC Mail.

Attachments

Set Auto Play File

[Attach File Window] ◎ Select file ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Set Auto Play File* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Enter Message* ➡ ● ➡ Enter comment ➡ ●

- Not available for PC Mail.

Graphic Mail

Creating Graphic Mail from Templates

■ Opening Templates from Messaging Menu

✉ ➡ ◎ *Templates* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select template ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

- Template size may change when used for creating messages.

■ Opening Templates from S! Mail Composition Window

[S! Mail Composition Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Launch Template* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select template ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

- Open a template before entering message text.

Changing Text Color, Size & Effect

[Graphic Mail Window] ✉ ➡ ✥ Select start point ➡ ● ➡ ✥ Highlight text range ➡ ● ➡ ✥ *Font Color:*, *Font Size:* or *Effect* ➡ ● ➡ Set ➡ ●

Opening & Replying

Opening New Messages

Information window opens for new mail.

- See **P.4-21** to receive PC Mail.



- By default, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; transmission fees apply depending on the price plan.
- Automatic message retrieval while abroad may incur high charges since flat-rate packet transmission plans do not apply during international roaming. Set handset to retrieve initial portion of message text, then manually retrieve complete message as needed.

Delivery Report

- Information window opens for Delivery Report. Follow these steps to open it:
  Delivery Report ➡ ● ➡ **Select message with report** ➡ ● ➡ Y!

1 ***Message*** ➡ ●



Message List

2 **Select message** ➡ ●



- Message text appears in 3D animation (3D Pictogram).

3 **Select 3D Pictogram option** ➡ ●

- Message window opens.

Receiving Feeling Mail

- Vibration and ringtone respond according to settings.

Attached Images

- Attached images open automatically.

Messages with Quiz

Enter or select answer ➡ ●

- ■ Message cannot be opened until the correct answer is entered or selected.

Animation View

- When a specific Pictogram is included in subject or message text, corresponding animation appears in message window background.

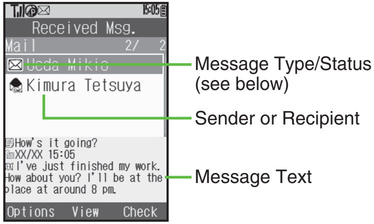
Advanced

●Opening New Mail Out of Standby ●Retrieving New S! Mail Manually ●Retrieving Server Mail List ●Viewing New Messages on External Display ●Reporting Unsolicited Message Sources as Spammers ●Saving Attachments to Data Folder (**P.4-12**)

●Hiding incoming Feeling Mail subject, sender, etc. ●Disabling 3D Pictogram ●Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan ●Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad ●Enabling image auto-resize ●Disabling image auto-open ●Enabling sound auto-play (**P.12-8** - **12-9**)

Window Description

Message List

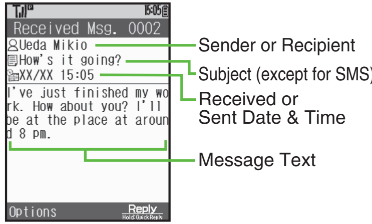


Message Type/Status

	Unread		Mail Notice (remaining portion exists)
	Read		Unread Delivery Report
	Sent		Attachments
	Failed		Protected
	Replied		Priority (High)
	Forwarded		Priority (Low)
	Send Reservation set		USIM Card SMS

SMS or PC appears for SMS/PC Mail messages (, , etc.).

Message Window



Press # to open previous (older) message, or * to open next (newer) one. Use ◀ ▶ to change font size.

Replying to Messages

1 **In message window, Y!**

2 **Complete message ➡ Y! ➡ Transmission starts**

Replying to Messages Addressed to Multiple Recipients

After 1, *To Sender* or *Reply All* ➡ ● ➡ 2

Auto Reply

- Handset sends a reply automatically when receiving messages from saved numbers or addresses in specified mode.

Advanced

●Using Linked Info ●Saving to Phone Book ●Copying Text ●Quoting Original Message Text ●Replying Quickly Using Fixed Text ●Replying to Messages Automatically (**P.4-12** - **4-13**)

●Changing message window scroll unit ●Changing message list view ●Showing complete sent/received message addresses (**P.12-8**)

4 Messaging

Handling Incoming Messages 1

Start Here → [Message Window] P.4-14

Receiving/Opening Messages

Opening New Mail Out of Standby

(Long)

Retrieving New S! Mail Manually

→

- When a PC Mail Account exists, select ***S! Mail*** and press .
- Retrieve messages missed while handset is out-of-range.

Retrieving Server Mail List

→ *Server Mail Box* → → *Mail List* → → *Yes* →

Viewing New Messages on External Display

→

- Available with handset closed.

Reporting Unsolicited Message Sources as Spammers

[Message Window] → *Report Spam* → →

- Signature is not inserted automatically.
- Not available for PC Mail.

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

[Message Window] Select file → → *Save to Data Folder* → → Enter name → → *Save here* →

- For templates, ***Save as Template*** appears. (Omit file name entry step.)

Handling Information

Using Linked Info

■ Dialing Numbers

[Message Window] Select number → → *Call* or *Video Call* →

■ Sending Messages

[Message Window] Select number or mail address → → *Create Message* → → *S! Mail* or *SMS* → → Complete message →

- For mail addresses, omit mail type selection step.

■ Accessing Internet Sites

[Message Window] Select URL → → *Yes* →

- Select ***PC Site Br.*** to connect via PC Site Browser.

Handling Incoming Messages 2

Start Here ➡ [Message Window] P.4-14 [General Settings Menu] P.4-16

Saving to Phone Book

Saving Sender Address

[Message Window] ✉ ➡ Save *Address* ➡ ● ➡ Select number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ Y!

- To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.

Saving Linked Info

[Message Window] Select number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ *Save to Phone Book* or *Save Address* ➡ ● ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Complete other fields ➡ Y!

- To add to an existing entry, select *As New Detail*.

Copying Text

Sender/Recipient Number/Address

[Message Window] ✉ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ *Address* ➡ ● ➡ Select number/address ➡ ●

Subject or Message Text

[Message Window] ✉ ➡ *Copy* ➡ ● ➡ *Subject* or *Message Text* ➡ ● ➡ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ●

Replying to Messages

Quoting Original Message Text

[Message Window] ✉ ➡ *Reply* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail (History)* or *SMS (History)* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

Replying Quickly Using Fixed Text

Editing Quick Reply Text

[General Settings Menu] *Send/ Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Quick Reply* ➡ ● ➡ Select text ➡ ● ➡ Edit text ➡ ●

Using Quick Reply

[Message Window] Y! (Long) ➡ Select text ➡ ●

Replying to Messages Automatically

Saving Recipients

[General Settings Menu] *Send/ Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Reply* ➡ ● ➡ *Address Setting* ➡ ● ➡ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter recipient ➡ Select mode ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Y! ➡ Y!

- Select saved recipient and press ● to edit number/address.

Editing Reply Text

[General Settings Menu] *Send/ Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Reply* ➡ ● ➡ *Reply Message* ➡ ● ➡ Select mode ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

- Edit text for each mode.

Activating Auto Reply

[General Settings Menu] *Send/ Compose* ➡ ● ➡ *Auto Reply* ➡ ● ➡ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

- Replies are sent via S! Mail.
- Except for some messages, replies are sent to the same sender only once each time Auto Reply is activated.
- Auto Reply is not available for PC Mail or while abroad.

Managing & Using Messages

Messaging Folders

Messages are organized in folders by type.



Auto Delete

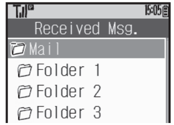
- Oldest received/sent messages are deleted automatically to save new ones when memory is full. Protect important messages to avoid unintentional deletion.

Opening Help

- Follow these steps in folder list, message list or message window:
  ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Help*** ➡ ●

Checking Messages

1 ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Received Msg.* or *Sent Messages*** ➡ ●



Folder List

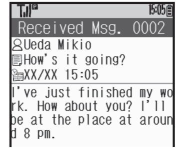
- When a PC Mail Account exists, folder with the name specified in Account Name appears.
- Select a folder and press Y! to hide/ show sub folders. To open full message list, hide sub folders and press ●.

2 ◎ **Select folder** ➡ ●



Message List

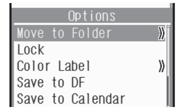
3 ◎ **Select message** ➡ ●



Message Window

Protecting Messages

1 **In message list, ◎ (select message)** ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Manage Msg.*** ➡ ●



Manage Msg. Menu

2 ◎ ***Lock*** ➡ ●

Canceling Protection

In 2, ◎ *Unlock* ➡ ●

Advanced

- Deleting Messages ● Selecting Multiple Messages ● Color-Tagging Messages ● Sorting Messages ● Opening Sender/Recipient Details ● Forwarding Messages ● Sending from Drafts (**P.4-22**)

- Changing view for Received Msg. folder ● Changing view for Sent Messages folder ● Canceling automatic deletion of oldest received messages ● Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages (**P.12-8**)

Searching Messages

Search messages by message text, sender/recipient address, etc.

1. ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Received Msg.*** **or** ***Sent Messages*** ➡ ●
2. ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Search*** ➡ ●
3. ◎ ***Search All Msg.*** ➡ ●
4. ◎ **Select method** ➡ ● ➡ **Select/enter address or text** ➡ ●

Searching within *Mail* Folder

In 3, ◎ *Search Folder* ➡ ● ➡ 4

Searching Message Text

- Follow these steps to find specific words/phrases; limit search by character type.

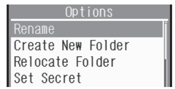
  [Message Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Search Text* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

  - Press Y! or ✉ to jump to next/previous search result.

Hiding Folders

Messages appear in Chat Folders even if source messages are sorted into Secret folders.

1. ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Received Msg.*** **or** ***Sent Messages*** ➡ ●
2. ◎ **Select folder** ➡ ✉



3. ◎ ***Set Secret*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ● ➡ ●

Accessing Secret Folders

After 1, ✉ ➡ ◎ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Advanced

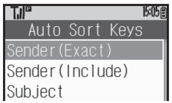
● Sending Unsent Messages ● Using Sent Messages ● Searching Messages within Specified Folder ● Saving Messages with Schedules to Calendar ● Canceling Secret (**P.4-23**)

● Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders (**P.12-8**)

Sorting Messages into Designated Folders

Sort messages by sender/recipient or partially matching text in sender/recipient address, subject or SMS message text.

1. ✉ ➡ ⓢ ***Received Msg.*** or ***Sent Messages*** ➡ ●
2. ⓢ Select target folder ➡ ✉
3. ⓢ ***My Folders*** ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select blank entry ➡ ●



4. ⓢ ***Sender(Exact)*** (***Recipient(Exact)*** for Sent Messages) ➡ ●
5. ⓢ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address ➡ ●
6. Y! ➡ Saved

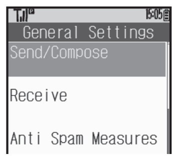
Sort by Partially Matching Text

In 4, ⓢ *Sender(Include)* (*Recipient(Include)* for Sent Messages) or *Subject* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ● ➡ 6

Filtering Spam

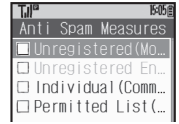
Follow these steps to filter messages from handset numbers/addresses not saved in Phone Book into Spam Folder:

1. ✉ ➡ ⓢ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ ***General Settings*** ➡ ●



General Settings Menu

2. ⓢ ***Anti Spam Measures*** ➡ ●
3. Enter Handset Code ➡ ●



Anti Spam Measures Menu

4. ⓢ ***Unregistered(Mobile)*** ➡ ● (☑)
5. Y! ➡ ●

Exempting Messages from Filtering

After 4, ⓢ *Permitted List(Common)* ➡ ✉ ➡ ⓢ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select key ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/address/subject ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ ● (☑) ➡ 5

When a PC Mail Account Exists

- Filter PC Mail messages from addresses not saved in Phone Book.

Advanced

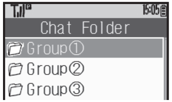
Renaming Folders ● Deleting Folders ● Adding Folders ● Re-sorting Messages ● Moving Messages Manually ● Sorting Spam by Setting Keys (**P.4-23 - 4-24**)

Using Chat Folders

Organize messages exchanged between handset and Chat members' handsets.
To hide messages, set Chat Folder to Secret.

Saving Members

1 → ***Chat Folder*** →

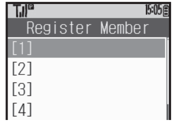


Chat Folder List

2 **Select folder** →



3 ***Add New Member*** →



4 **Select blank entry** →

- Select saved member to edit number/ address.

5 **Select method** → → **Select/enter number/ address** →



- Repeat 4 - 5 to add members.

6 → **Saved**

Changing Members

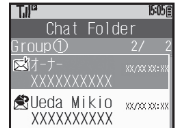
In 4, (select member) → → *Change Member* → → From 5

Deleting Members

In 4, (select member) → → *Delete* → → *Yes* → → 6

Opening Chat Folders

1 **In Chat Folder list, (select folder)** →



2 **Select message** →

Advanced

Renaming Folders Adding Folders Re-sorting Messages Deleting Folders Deleting All Messages Resetting Chat Folders (**P.4-23** - **4-24**)

Creating Groups for Broadcast Mail

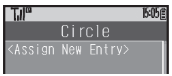
Create Mail Groups to send messages to multiple recipients at one time.

1. → *Settings* →
2. *Set Mail Group* →



Mail Group Entry Window

3. *<Add New Group>* → → Enter name →
4. Select Group →



5. *<Assign New Entry>* → → Select entry →



6. Select number or mail address →



- Omit 6 if only one number or address is saved.
- Repeat 5 - 6 to add members.

7. → Saved

Advanced

Renaming Mail Groups Deleting Mail Groups/Group Members
Changing Mail Group Members (**P.4-24**)

PC Mail

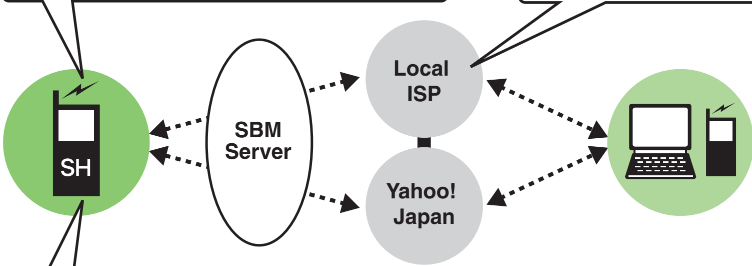
Receive or reply to PC mail account messages.

Save PC mail account information to handset:

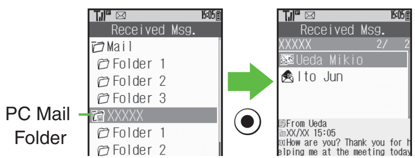
- User Name
- Incoming Mail Server
- Password
- Outgoing Mail Server
- Mail Address

Retrieve mail delivered to ISP or Yahoo! accounts.

- Alternatively, use automatic message retrieval option.



Messages are saved in unique folders; reply to/send messages via PC mail account addresses.



- Handle messages (sort, etc.) like S! Mail or SMS. (Unavailable functions do not appear in Options menu and some may appear under different names.)

Important PC Mail Usage Notes

- Receiving PC Mail for the first time after PC Mail Account setup may incur high charges due to large-volume packet transmissions.
- Setting handset to retrieve PC Mail automatically may incur high charges; remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.
- Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.
- Checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists.
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.
- When messages sent from handset to PC mail account are retrieved by handset, included Pictograms may not appear or may appear as different characters.

PC Mail Account Setup

- Proceed with setup according to information supplied by ISP.
- PC Mail services may be unavailable depending on the services, settings or contract details for your PC mail account. Confirm compatibility with POP/SMTP message retrieval/transmission via e-mail software beforehand.

■ Mandatory Items for Retrieval

User Name	Required to connect to incoming mail server
Password	Required to connect to incoming mail server
ReceivingServer	Incoming mail server address

■ Mandatory Items for Transmission

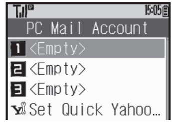
Mail Address	Address to use PC Mail
Sender Server	Outgoing mail server address

Setting Other Items

- Edit information as needed; for description, select an item and press ✉.

1 ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***PC Mail Settings*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***PC Mail Account*** ➡ ●



PC Mail Account Window

3 ◎ ***<Empty>*** ➡ ●

4 ◎ ***Account Name*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter name** ➡ ●

5 ◎ ***Set Receiving*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Select/ enter item** ➡ ● ➡ Y!

- User Name, Password and ReceivingServer are mandatory.

6 ◎ ***Set Sending*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Select/ enter item** ➡ ●

- Mail Address and Sender Server are mandatory.

7 Y! ➡ Y! ➡ ●

- When a confirmation appears, follow onscreen prompts.

Using Yahoo! Mail Addresses

In 3, ◎ *Set Quick Yahoo! Mail* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

- ■ Follow onscreen instructions.
- ■ Choose ***No*** to create a new account.

Editing Accounts

In 3, ◎ (select account) ➡ ● ➡ 4 - 7

Deleting Accounts

In 3, ◎ (select account) ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Saving User ID & Password for Transmission

- If User Name and Password are unset Set Receiving items are automatically used for SMTP authentication. Follow these steps if ISP requires User Name and Password:

In 6, ◎ *Set Sending* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Sender Auth.* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *SMTP Auth.* ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *User Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Password* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Password ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ 7

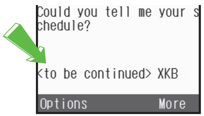
Retrieving New PC Mail

Retrieve new messages from created accounts. If message count is high, some may not be received on the first attempt.

1 ✉ ➡ ✉
- To retrieve messages by account, select one and press ●.

2 ✉

3 ◎ **Select folder** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select message** ➡ ●



Message Window

- Press (Y!) to retrieve full message.
- Message window is similar to that of S! Mail.

When Handset is Set to Retrieve Messages Automatically

- Messages are received after set intervals. (Information window opens.)

Deleting Messages

[Message List] ◎ **Select message** ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Delete*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select option** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Checking Received PC Mail

1 ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Received Msg.*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select folder** ➡ ●
- Message list appears. Message list is similar to that of S! Mail.

2 ◎ **Select message** ➡ ●
- Message window opens.

Replying to PC Mail

1 **In message window,** (Y!)
- PC Mail Composition window opens.

2 **Complete message** ➡ (Y!) ➡ **Transmission starts**

Quoting Original Message Text in Replies

[Message Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Reply*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Quoted Reply*** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ (Y!)

- HTML messages are converted to plain text when quoted.

Changing Account for Outgoing Messages

[PC Mail Composition Window] ◎ **Select recipient field** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***From:*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select account** ➡ ●

Sending PC Mail

Follow these steps to create and send PC Mail:

1 ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Create Message*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ **Select PC Mail Account** ➡ ●

3 **Complete message** ➡ (Y!) ➡ **Transmission starts**

Converting PC Mail to S! Mail

After 2, ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Convert to S! Mail*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Note
- Single-byte katakana and Pictograms are not supported.

Advanced

● Saving without Sending ● Auto Send when Signal Returns (**P.4-8**) ● Handling Incoming Messages (**P.4-12** - **4-13**) ● Managing Messages (**P.4-22** - **4-24**)

● Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages ● Retrieving complete PC Mail messages ● Retrieving new messages automatically ● Changing interval between automatic message retrieval ● Disabling automatic word wrap (**P.12-8** - **12-9**)

Managing Messages 1

Start Here → [Message List] P.4-14 [Manage Msg. Menu] P.4-14 [Message Window] P.4-14

Managing Messages

Deleting Messages

One Message

[Message List] Select message → ✉ → *Delete* → ● → *Yes* → ●

- Alternatively, delete an open message.

All Messages

[Manage Msg. Menu] *Delete All* → ● → *Except Locked Msg.* or *Delete All* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●

All Messages in Drafts or Unsent Messages

[Message List (Drafts or Unsent Messages)] ✉ → *Delete All* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ●

Selecting Multiple Messages

Selecting

[Message List] Select message → Y!

Selecting Up to 50 Messages at Once

[Manage Msg. Menu] *Check in Block* → ●

Unchecking

[Message List] Select message → Y!

Unchecking All

[Message List] ✉ → *Unselect All* → ●

Color-Tagging Messages

[Manage Msg. Menu] *Color Label* → ● → Select color → ●

Sorting Messages

[Message List] ✉ → *View Settings* → ● → *Sort* → ● → Select option → ●

Opening Sender/Recipient Details

[Message List] Select message → ✉ → *View Mail Address* → ● → Select sender or recipient → ●

Using Messages

Forwarding Messages

[Message Window] ✉ → *Forward* → ● → Select recipient field → ● → Select method → ● → Select/enter number/address → ● → Y!

- Attached files are forwarded.
- To forward SMS messages, select ***S! Mail*** or ***SMS*** and press ●.

Sending from Drafts

✉ → *Drafts* → ● → Select message → ● → Complete message → Y!

Managing Messages 2

Start Here → [Message List] P.4-14 [Folder List] P.4-14 [Manage Msg. Menu] P.4-14 [Chat Folder List] P.4-17

Sending Unsent Messages

Sending without Editing

[Message List (Unsent Messages)] [Navigation] Select message ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Resend* ➡ ●

Edit & Send

[Message List (Unsent Messages)] [Navigation] Select message ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ [Y!]

Using Sent Messages

[Message List (Sent Messages)] [Navigation] Select message ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Edit & Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ [Y!]

Searching Messages within Specified Folder

[Folder List] [Navigation] Select folder ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Search* ➡ ● ➡ [Navigation] *Search Folder* ➡ ● ➡ [Navigation] Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/enter number/ address/subject/text string ➡ ●

Saving Messages with Schedules to Calendar

[Manage Msg. Menu] [Navigation] *Save to Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Enter subject ➡ ● ➡ Enter start/end date/time ➡ ● ➡ [Y!]

Folders

Renaming Folders

[Folder List]/[Chat Folder List] [Navigation] Select folder ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Rename* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Deleting Folders

[Folder List] [Navigation] Select folder ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

- Empty folder before deleting it.

Adding Folders

[Folder List]/[Chat Folder List] [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Create New Folder* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

Canceling Secret

Unlock Secret folders temporarily and [Navigation] (select Secret folder) ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Unset Secret* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Sorting into Folders

Re-sorting Messages

[Folder List]/[Chat Folder List] [Navigation] Select folder ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Navigation] *Classify* ➡ ●

Managing Messages 3

Start Here →[Manage Msg. Menu] P.4-14 [Anti Spam Measures Menu] P.4-16 [Chat Folder List] P.4-17 [Mail Group Entry Window] P.4-18

Moving Messages Manually

[Manage Msg. Menu] ◎ *Move to Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select folder ➡ ●

- When sort messages confirmation appears, choose *Yes* ➡ ●; messages sent to/received from the number/address will be sorted into selected folder automatically.

Filtering Spam

Sorting Spam by Setting Keys

[Anti Spam Measures Menu] ◎ *Individual(Common)* ➡ ● (☑) ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ Select blank entry ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select key ➡ ● ➡ Select/ enter number/address/subject ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ Y! ➡ ●

Chat Folders

Deleting Folders

[Chat Folder List] ◎ Select folder ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting All Messages

[Chat Folder List] ◎ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Manage Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Resetting Chat Folders

[Chat Folder List] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Reset* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Mail Groups

Renaming Mail Groups

[Mail Group Entry Window] ◎ Select Group ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Edit Name* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting Mail Groups/Group Members

■ Mail Groups

[Mail Group Entry Window] ◎ Select Group ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

■ Group Members

[Mail Group Entry Window] ◎ Select Group ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Remove Entry* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

- Source Phone Book entries remain even after deleting members.

Changing Mail Group Members

[Mail Group Entry Window] ◎ Select Group ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Re-assign Entry* ➡ ● ➡ ✣ Select entry ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

5

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Service Basics

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai, or view PC Internet sites via PC Site Browser.

- Service requires a separate contract; retrieve Network Information to use these services.
- For more about Yahoo! Keitai, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.13-21**).

Transmission/Information Fees

Some page content may automatically activate Internet connection incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

Security

Electronic certificates are saved on handset to support SSL (encryption protocol for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information).

Secure Pages

- A confirmation appears before entering and exiting secure pages.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SoftBank, VeriSign Japan, Cybertrust, Entrust Japan, GlobalSign, RSA Security and SECOM Trust Systems cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Advanced

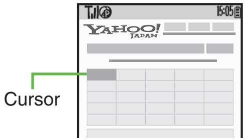
Clearing cookies; Clearing authentication information (**P.12-10**)

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Main Menu

Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.

1 Y! ➡ **Connection starts**



Internet Page

- Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu appears.
- To disconnect, press Y!.

2 **Highlight menu item** ➡ ●

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat **2** to open additional links.

3 ⏻ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] Y! ➡ Previous page opens

- Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
  [Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Forward* ➡ ●

Returning to Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ●

User Authentication

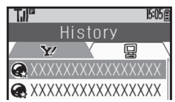
Enter user ID or password ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Streaming

- Enjoy audiovisual media while it downloads.
- Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Using History

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *History* ➡ ●



History List

2 **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Connection starts**

- Corresponding page opens.

3 ⏻ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Entering URLs Directly

1 ● ➡ *Yahoo! Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ *Enter URL* ➡ ●



Enter URL Window

2 **Enter URL** ➡ ● ➡ **Connection starts**

- Corresponding page opens.

3 ⏻ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Page closes**

Advanced

Switching Browsers ● Deleting History ● Using Previously Entered URLs (**P.5-9**)

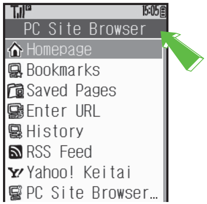
Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) ● Restoring default handset settings (**P.12-10**)

Using PC Site Browser

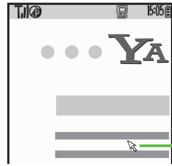
Open PC sites from Yahoo! JAPAN (preset home page).

- Internet pages may not open depending on connection/Server status, etc.
- Browsing PC sites may incur higher charges.

1 ◉ ➡ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ***PC Site Browser*** ➡ ◉



2 ***Homepage*** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Connection starts**



Internet Page

- Yahoo! JAPAN Home opens.
- When a message appears, follow onscreen prompts.
- To disconnect, press Y!.

3 **Highlight menu item** ➡ ◉

- Corresponding page opens.
- Repeat 3 to open additional links.

4 ➡ ***Yes*** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Page closes**

Returning to Previous Pages

[Internet Page] Y! ➡ Previous page opens

■ Follow these steps to return to the initial page:
[Internet Page] ➡ ***Forward*** ➡ ◉

Returning to Yahoo! JAPAN Home

[Internet Page] ➡ ***Homepage*** ➡ ◉

User Authentication

Enter user ID or password ➡ ◉ ➡ Y!

Using History

In 2, ***History*** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Select item** ➡ ◉

Entering URLs Directly

In 2, ***Enter URL*** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Enter URL** ➡ ◉

Advanced

Switching Browsers ● Deleting History ● Using Previously Entered URLs (**P.5-9**)

Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.) ● Restoring default handset settings ● Hiding PC Site Browser activation/change confirmation (**P.12-10**)

Basic Operations

Page Browsing

Scrolling Pages

If page content continues beyond view, use ◎ to scroll pages.
Long Press ◎ to scroll continuously. On PC sites, use Page Navigation to confirm current page position.

Switching Frames

On framed pages, Long Press 辞書 to select other frames.
When pointer navigation is active, point to a frame and press ● to select it.

Viewing Single Frame

Select frame → ✉ → ◎ ***Convenient Functions*** → ● → ◎ ***Frame In*** → ●

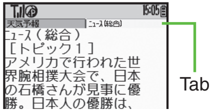
- To return, press CLEAR/BACK.

Tabbed Browsing

Open another page in a new tab and switch between tabs.

Opening a New Tab

1. **On a page, ◎ (select menu item) → ✉ → ◎ *Tab Menu* → ●**
2. **◎ *Open in New Tab* → ●**



Switching Tabs

1. **✱ (Long) → ◎ Select tab → ●**
   - When pointer navigation is active, point to a tab and press ● to open it.

Closing Tabs

✱ (Long) → ◎ Select tab → ● → ✉ → ◎ ***Tab Menu*** → ● → ◎ ***Close Tab*** or ***Close All Other Tabs*** → ●

Advanced

● Switching View ● Zooming on Pages (Zoom Factor) ● Jumping to Specific Locations ● Zooming Specific Areas ● Copying Text ● Sending URLs via Mail ● Searching Current Page (**P.5-9**)

● Changing character size ● Changing scroll unit ● Activating pointer navigation ● Changing pointer speed ● Disabling automatic image display ● Disabling automatic sound playback ● Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll ● Changing scroll unit (PC Site Browser) (**P.12-10**)

Selecting Text

Activate pointer navigation and Long Press ◉ to enable text selection (Drag Mode). Select text to copy or search via Web Search.
Follow these steps to copy text:

1 On a page, ✣ (select first character) ➡ ◉ (Long)
- Drag Mode is activated.

2 ✣ Highlight text range ➡ ◉

3 ✉ ➡ ↕ *Copy Text* ➡ ◉
- Text is copied.

Searching Text via Web Search
In 3, ✉ ➡ ↕ *Copy & Search* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉

Text Entry

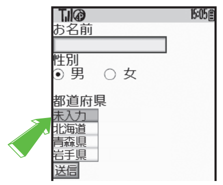
1 On a page, ✣ (select text entry field) ➡ ◉

2 Enter text ➡ ◉
- Internet page returns.

Using Entered Text (Input Memory)
[Internet page] ✣ Select text entry field ➡ ◉ ➡ ✉ ➡ ↕ *Insert/Font Size* ➡ ◉ ➡ ↕ *Input Memory* ➡ ◉ ➡ ↕ Select text ➡ ◉

Pull-down Menu Item Selection

1 On a page, ✣ (select menu list field) ➡ ◉



2 ↕ Select item ➡ ◉

When Multiple Selection is Supported
- Select items as needed and press CLEAR/BACK.

Page Item Indicators

Selection Items

Buttons ○ or boxes ☐ appear.

1 On a page, ✣ (select button or box) ➡ ◉



- ○/☐ changes to ◉/☑.

Execution Items

Execute the assigned command.

1 On a page, ✣ (select command) ➡ ◉

Advanced

☞ ●Using Web Search ●Saving Files to Data Folder ●Using Linked Info ●Jumping to Page Top/Bottom ●Opening Function Shortcuts ●Playing Media Streams (**P.5-10**)

🔧 ●Clearing cache (temporarily saved information) ●Using Memory Card as primary download storage (**P.12-10**)

Using Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmarks

Bookmark sites for quick access.

Saving Bookmarks

1 On a page, ➡ ***Bookmarks*** ➡ ➡ ***Save*** ➡

- ***Save*** appears only for savable pages.

2 Enter/edit title ➡

Opening Bookmarks

1 ➡ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ➡ ➡ ***Bookmarks*** ➡



Bookmarks List

2 Select title ➡

- Corresponding page opens.

Opening Bookmarks Online

[Internet Page] ➡ ***Bookmarks*** ➡ ➡ ***Open List*** ➡ ➡ Select title ➡

Saved Pages

Save page content; handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Internet.

Saving Pages

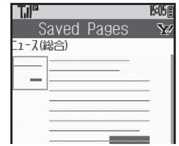
1 On a page, ➡ ***Saved Pages*** ➡ ➡ ***Save*** ➡

- ***Save*** appears only for savable pages.

2 Enter/edit title ➡

Opening Saved Pages

1 ➡ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ➡ ➡ ***Saved Pages*** ➡



Saved Pages List

2 Select page ➡

- Corresponding page opens.

Opening Saved Pages Online

[Internet Page] ➡ ***Saved Pages*** ➡ ➡ ***Open List*** ➡ ➡ Select page ➡

Advanced

Deleting Titles/Pages Editing Titles Editing Bookmarked URLs Sending Bookmarked URLs via Mail (**P.5-11**)

Updating Blogs & News

Register RSS-compatible sites; view content updates without opening source sites. Transmission fees apply.

Subscribing to RSS Feeds

Available for PC Site Browser only.

Via RSS-Compatible Sites

[RSS icon] appears for RSS-compatible sites.



RSS Indicator

1. **On a page,** ✉ ➡ ◯ ***Register In RSS Feed*** ➡ ◉
2. ◯ **Select feed** ➡ ◉ **(☐/☑)** ➡ **Complete selection** ➡ Y!
3. ◯ ***Save*** ➡ ◉
   - Choose ***Yes*** to update immediately or ***No*** and press ◉.

Via RSS Icons

Use RSS/RDF/XML icons on RSS-compatible sites.

1. **On a page,** ✥ **(select icon)** ➡ ◉
2. ◯ ***Yes*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ ***Save*** ➡ ◉

Checking Updates

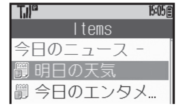
Follow these steps to update all feeds:

1. ◉ ➡ ✥ ***Yahoo! Keitai*** ➡ ◉
2. ◯ ***PC Site Browser*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ ***RSS Feed*** ➡ ◉



RSS Feed List

3. ◯ ***Reload All*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉
4. ◯ ***Yes*** **or** ***No*** ➡ ◉
5. ◯ **Select feed** ➡ ◉



Title List

6. ◯ **Select title** ➡ ◉
   - Information appears.

Updating Single RSS Feeds
[RSS Feed List] ◯ **Select feed** ➡ ✉ ➡ ◯ ***Reload*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ ***Yes*** **or** ***No*** ➡ ◉

Disabling/Enabling Updates
[RSS Feed List] ◯ **Select feed** ➡ ✉ ➡ ◯ ***Manage RSS Feed*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ ***Restrict Update*** **or** ***Accept Update*** ➡ ◉

Accessing Source Sites
[Title List] ◯ **Select title** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ **Select linked title** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ ***Yes*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉ ➡ ◯ ***Yes*** **or** ***No*** ➡ ◉

Advanced

Deleting RSS Feeds (**P.5-11**)

Deleting all RSS feeds (**P.12-10**)

Additional Functions 1

Start Here → [Internet Page] P.5-3, P.5-4 [History List] P.5-3 [Enter URL Window] P.5-3

Connecting/Browsing

Switching Browsers

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Change to PC Browser* or *Switch Browser* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *This Page* or *Linked Page* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* or *No* ➡ ●

Deleting History

■ One Record

[History List] ◎ Select record ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

■ All Records

[History List] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Using Previously Entered URLs

[Enter URL Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *URL Entry Log* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select URL ➡ ● ➡ ●

PC Site Browser

Switching View

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *PC Screen* or *Small Screen* ➡ ●

- In Small Screen view, PC sites are redesigned to fit Display.

Zooming on Pages (Zoom Factor)

[Internet Page] ◀ (enlarge) or ▶ (reduce)

Jumping to Specific Locations

[Internet Page] 5 (Long) ➡ Quick Movement map appears ➡ ◎ Select location ➡ ●

Zooming Specific Areas

[Internet Page] ◎ Point to area ➡ 7 (Long)

- Pointed area is enlarged and shown in the lower half of Display. Long Press 7 to toggle Zoom Area options (Small, Large and Off).

Handling Information

Copying Text

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Copy Text* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select first character ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Highlight text range ➡ ●

Sending URLs via Mail

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Send URL* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Searching Current Page

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

- Press ● to jump to next search result, if any.

Additional Functions 2

Start Here ➡ [Internet Page] P.5-3, P.5-4

Using Web Search

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Web Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

Saving Files to Data Folder

Files on Page

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Save Items* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select file ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Save* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Save here* ➡ ●

- Some files are saved automatically.
- Confirm signal is strong, battery is adequately charged and that there is enough free memory beforehand.

Background Images

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Save Items* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Save Background Image* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Save* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Save here* ➡ ●

Using Linked Info

Dialing Numbers

[Internet Page] ◎ Highlight number ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Call* or *Video Call* ➡ ●

Sending Messages

[Internet Page] ◎ Highlight number or mail address ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Create Message* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

Page Operations

Jumping to Page Top/Bottom

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Convenient Functions* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Jump In Page* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Page Top* or *Page Bottom* ➡ ●

Opening Function Shortcuts

[Internet Page] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Help* ➡ ●

Streaming

Playing Media Streams

[Internet Page] ◎ Select file ➡ ●

- Downloaded content cannot be saved.

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Additional Functions 3

Start Here → [List] Bookmarks: P.5-7, Saved Pages: P.5-7 [RSS Feed List] P.5-8

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Deleting Titles/Pages

■ One Title/Page

[Bookmarks List]/[Saved Pages List] ◎ Select item → ✉ → ◎ *Delete* → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●

■ All Titles/Pages

[Bookmarks List]/[Saved Pages List] ✉ → ◎ *Delete All* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●

Editing Titles

■ Bookmarks

[Bookmarks List] ◎ Select title → ✉ → ◎ *Edit* → ● → ◎ *Title:* → ● → Enter title → ● → Y!

■ Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] ◎ Select page → ✉ → ◎ *Rename* → ● → Enter title → ●

Editing Bookmarked URLs

[Bookmarks List] ◎ Select title → ✉ → ◎ *Edit* → ● → ◎ *URL:* → ● → Edit → ● → Y!

Sending Bookmarked URLs via Mail

[Bookmarks List] ◎ Select title → ✉ → ◎ *Send* → ● → ◎ *As Message* → ● → ◎ *S! Mail* or *SMS* → ● → Complete message → Y!

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

RSS Feeds

Deleting RSS Feeds

■ One Entry

[RSS Feed List] ◎ Select feed → ✉ → ◎ *Delete* → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●

■ All Entries

[RSS Feed List] ✉ → ◎ *Manage RSS Feed* → ● → ◎ *Delete All* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●

6

Camera & Imaging

Getting Started

Capture still images or record video.

Various Image Sizes

Select small sizes to send captured images/recorded video via S! Mail*; select larger sizes for higher resolutions.

Multiple Shooting Modes

Apply effect or add frame, capture sequential/panoramic or scan images.

Auto Focus

Measures the distance between subjects and camera to adjust focus.

Imaging Functions

Edit captured images or print on a compatible printer.

*Images/video may not be delivered as sent depending on file size or recipient device.

Precautions

- Clean dust/smudges from lens cover with a soft cloth before use.
- Mobile camera is a precision instrument, however, some pixels may appear brighter or darker.
- Shooting/saving images while handset is hot may affect the image quality.
- Subjecting the lens to direct sunlight will damage the camera's color filter.

Auto Shut-off

- Before image capture/recording, mobile camera shuts down after a period of inactivity and handset returns to Standby.

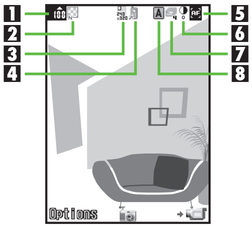
Shutter Click

- Shutter click and Self-timer tone sound at fixed volume regardless of handset settings.

Display Indicators

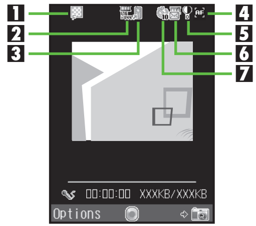
The following indicators appear at the top of Display.

Photo Viewfinder



1	Memory	6	Exposure
2	Picture Quality	7	Continuous Shoot
3	Picture Size	8	Scene
4	Save to	8	Self-timer
5	Focus		

Video Viewfinder



1	Video Quality	5	Exposure
2	Record Size	6	Record Time
3	Save to	7	Self-timer
4	Focus		

Capturing Still Images

1 ● ➡ ✣ *Camera* ➡ ●

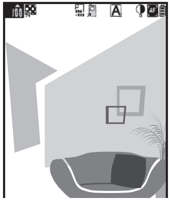


Photo Viewfinder

2 **Frame image on Display ➡ ●**

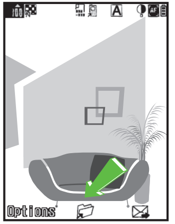


Image Save Window

- Shutter clicks and the captured image appears. (To discard file and start over, press CLEAR/BACK.)

3 ●

- Image is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
- Open saved images from Data Folder.

4 ☎ ➡ **Camera shuts down**

Sending Captured Images via S! Mail

After 2, Y! ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

- May not be delivered as sent depending on file size or recipient device.

Opening Saved Images

After 3, ✉ ➡ ✣ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ↕ Select file ➡ ●

Pre-Image Capture Operations

Zoom In/Out	↑/↓ (9: maximum/off)
Toggle Mode	Y!
Adjust Image Brightness	←/→
Change Image Size	5
Toggle Focus Mode	1
Open Help	0

Advanced

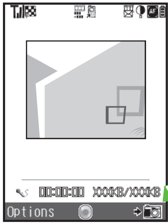
● Adjusting Focus Quickly for Close-up Shots ● Adjusting Focus Manually ● Locking Focus ● Sending Images Wirelessly ● Changing Image Size ● Changing Mode According to Lighting or Subject (**P.6-12**)

● Changing save location ● Activating automatic saving ● Selecting image quality ● Changing shutter click sound (**P.12-11**)

Recording Video

1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Camera*** ➡ ●

2 Ⓨ!



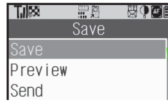
Video Viewfinder

- Omit **2** if Video Camera is already active.
- For pre-recording operations, see **P.6-4** "Pre-Image Capture Operations."

3 **Frame image on Display** ➡ ●

- Recording starts after a tone. (To start over, press CLEAR/BACK.)
- Press Ⓨ! to pause/resume recording (may be unavailable depending on file size).

4 ●



Video Save Menu

- Recording stops with a tone. (To discard file and start over, press CLEAR/BACK.)

5 ↕ ***Save*** ➡ ●

- Video is saved. (Viewfinder returns for another shot.)
- Play saved video from Data Folder or Media Player.

6 ☎ ➡ **Camera shuts down**

Playing Unsaved Video

In **5**, ↕ ***Preview*** ➡ ●

Playing Saved Video

After **5**, ✉ ➡ ✣ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ● ➡ ↕ **Select file** ➡ ●

Sending Recorded Video via S! Mail

In **5**, ↕ ***Send*** ➡ ● ➡ ↕ ***Save and Send*** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡ Ⓨ!

- ■ May not be delivered as sent depending on file size or recipient device.

Incoming Calls

- If a call arrives before video is saved, recorded clip is temporarily saved. End the call to return.

When Battery Runs Low

- Recording stops. (Recorded clip is saved.)

Advanced

Adjusting Focus Quickly for Close-up Shots ● Adjusting Focus Manually ● Locking Focus ● Sending Images Wirelessly ● Changing Recording Time/Size (**P.6-12**)

Changing save location ● Activating automatic saving ● Selecting image quality ● Recording video without sound ● Enlarging Viewfinder size (**P.12-11**)

Using Shooting Modes

May be unavailable depending on selected image/video size.

Self-timer

1 **In Photo/Video Viewfinder, ✉ ➡ ✣ *Self-timer* ➡ ●**

2 **✣ Select time ➡ ●**



3 **Frame image on Display ➡ ●**

- After selected time elapses, captured image appears or recording starts.
- To stop recording, press ●.

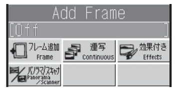
Releasing Shutter during Countdown
After 3, ●
Incoming Calls/Alarm during Countdown
- Countdown stops. (Self-timer remains active.)

Continuous Shoot (Photo Camera)

Available Modes:

4 Pictures	Capture four separate images with Index Image
9 Pictures	Capture nine separate images with Index Image
Overlapped	Capture five images to create a composite image

1 **In Photo Viewfinder, ✉ ➡ ✣ *Modes* ➡ ●**



Mode Menu

2 **✣ *Continuous Shoot* ➡ ●**

3 **✣ Select mode ➡ ● ➡ ✣ Select speed ➡ ●**

4 **Frame image on Display ➡ ●**

- After image capture, Index Image or a composite image appears.
- When shooting speed is set to ***Manual*** (4 Pictures and 9 Pictures modes), repeat 4 for each frame.

5 **●**

6 **✣ *All Pictures* ➡ ●**

- All captured images are saved.

Saving the Selected Image
After 4, ✣ (select image) ➡ ● ➡ ✣ *Selected Picture* ➡ ●

Adding Frames (Photo Camera)

1 **In mode menu, ✣ *Add Frame* ➡ ●**

2 **✣ *Preset Frames* ➡ ● ➡ ✣ Select frame ➡ ●**

3 **Frame image on Display ➡ ●**

- Captured image appears.

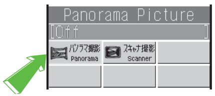
Using Frames in Data Folder
In 2, ✣ *Data Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ✣ Select frame ➡ ● ➡ ●

Camera Effects (Photo Camera)

1. In mode menu, *Camera Effects* ➡ ●
2. Select effect ➡ ●
3. Frame image on Display ➡ ●
   - Captured image appears.

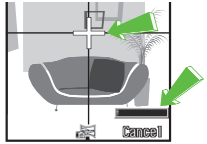
Panorama Picture (Photo Camera)

1. In mode menu, *Panorama/Scanner* ➡ ●

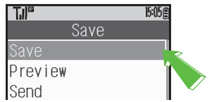


Panorama/Scanner Menu

2. *Panorama Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
3. Frame image on Display ➡ ●



   - Move handset slowly to keep ✛ aligned with either of yellow lines.
   - Image is captured automatically when the bar (▭) turns blue.
4. ●



Save Menu

   - Image is captured and Save menu opens.
5. *Save* ➡ ●
   - Image is saved.

Checking Unsaved Images

[Save Menu] *Preview* ➡ ●

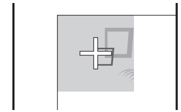
■ To change preview method, follow these steps:
➡ *Manual Scroll* or *Full Image* ➡ ●

Sending Captured Images via S! Mail

[Save Menu] *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Save and Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡

Scanning Images (Photo Camera)

1. In Panorama/Scanner menu, *Scanner* ➡ ●
2. Select size ➡ ● ➡ Frame image on Display ➡ ●



   - Move handset slowly to scan the area to capture. (Refer to indicators on Display.)
3. ●
   - Image is captured and Save menu opens.
4. *Save* ➡ ●
   - Image is saved.

Handling Captured Images

- Preview or send them via S! Mail in the same way as Panorama Picture images.

Advanced

Sending Images Wirelessly (**P.6-12**)

Getting Started

The following options are available. Some images may not be editable depending on file type and size.

Picture Editor

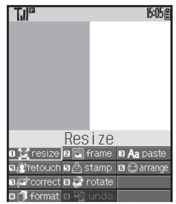
Resize	Select from preset sizes or crop image for size
Frame	Add Frame to images
Paste	Add text/dates to images
Retouch	Dress up images with preloaded visual effects
Stamp	Add stamps to images
Face Arrange	Make smiley, angry or sad faces
Correction	Correct images
Rotate	Rotate images
File Format	Convert file format and change file size

Composite

Split Picture	Combine up to four images into one
Merge Panorama	Combine two still images into one

Basic Operations

1. ● ➡ ◈ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ●
2. ◈ ***Pictures*** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ **Select image** ➡ ●
3. ✉ ➡ ◈ ***Edit*** ➡ ●
4. ◈ ***Picture Editor*** or ***Composite*** ➡ ●



Picture Editor Menu



Composite Menu

5. ◈ **Select effect** ➡ ● ➡ **Edit**
   - To start over, press CLEAR/BACK.
6. **When finished,** Y!



- For Split Picture, skip ahead to 8. For Merge Panorama, press ● and skip ahead to 8.

7. ◈ ***Save as New*** ➡ ●
   - To overwrite, select ***Overwrite*** and press ●. (Omit 8.)
8. **Enter name** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ ***Save here*** ➡ ●

Canceling Effects

After 5, ◈ *Undo* ➡ ●

■ To restore effect immediately after canceling, select ***Redo*** and press ●.

6 Camera & Imaging

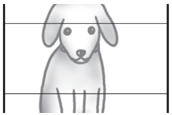
Editing Procedures

Changing Image Size

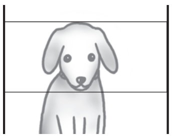
Resize to Preset Size

1. In Picture Editor menu, ◎ ***Resize*** ➡ ●

2. ◎ **Select size** ➡ ●



3. ◎ **Specify display area**



- To zoom in/out, press ✉ then use ◎.
- Omit 3 if there is no rectangle on the image.

4. ●

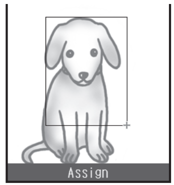
- Editing is completed.

Cropping Images

1. In Picture Editor menu, ◎ ***Resize*** ➡ ●

2. ◎ ***Cut*** ➡ ●

3. ◎ **Move + to the upper left corner of the portion to crop** ➡ ●



4. ◎ **Move + to the lower right corner of the portion to crop** ➡ ●

5. ◎ **Specify display area**

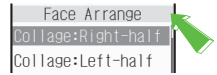
- To zoom in/out, press ✉ then use ◎.

6. ●

- Editing is completed.

Face Arrange

1. In Picture Editor menu, ◎ ***Face Arrange*** ➡ ●



Face Arrange Menu

2. ◎ **Select type** ➡ ●

3. ●

- Editing is completed.

Important Face Arrange Usage Note

- When using Face Arrange, take care not to create images that may embarrass or offend others. Always obtain permission before photographing others.

Advanced

☞ ●Applying Visual Effects ●Adding Text ●Adding Frames ●Adding Stamps (**P.6-13**)

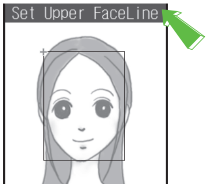
Adjusting Positions

Change the default positions and sizes of targets to fit the image.

1 In Face Arrange menu, ✉ ➡ ✉

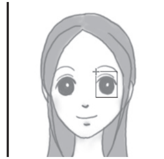
- A rectangle appears with + in the upper left corner.

2 ✥ Move + to top left of face

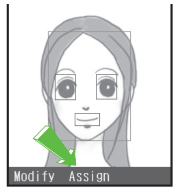


3 ◉

4 ✥ Move + to bottom right of face ➡ ◉



- Face line is set. Set the eyes and then mouth in the same way.



5 ◉ ➡ ⇕ *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ ✥ *Save here* ➡ ◉

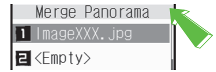
- Image is saved as a new entry with Face Arrange positions adjusted. Complete Face Arrange. Face Arrange is applied to the adjusted positions.

Panorama Images

Panorama Image Effects:

Near View	Best suited for close-up shots
Document	Use for images with text
Standard	Apply to other images

1 In Composite menu, ✥ *Merge Panorama* ➡ ◉



2 ⇕ *<Empty>* ➡ ◉ ➡ ✥ Select image ➡ ◉

3 ⇕ *EFFECT* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⇕ Select effect ➡ ◉

- Editing is completed.

Changing Images

After 3, ⇕ (select image) ➡ ◉ ➡ ✉ ➡ ✥ Select image ➡ ◉

Switching Image Positions

After 2, ✉

Advanced

Correcting Image Parameters · Rotating Images · Converting File Format · Combining Reduced Images (**P.6-13**)

Printing Images

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

Select images from Memory Card and specify the number of copies to print on DPOF-compatible printers, or at digital printing services.
DPOF settings made on other devices are unusable; delete existing settings to create new ones on handset.

1. ● ➡ ◈ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ ***Connectivity***
2. ◈ ***Memory Card*** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ ***DPOF*** ➡ ●

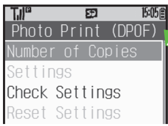
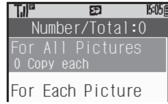


Photo Print Menu

3. ◈ ***Number of Copies*** ➡ ●



4. ◈ ***For Each Picture*** ➡ ● ➡ ◈ **Select folder** ➡ ●
5. ◈ **Select image** ➡ ✉



6. **Enter a number of copies to print** ➡ ●
   - For more settings, repeat 5 - 6.
7. Y!

Applying a Number to All Images
In 4, ◈ ***For All Pictures*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter a number of copies to print** ➡ ●

Canceling Specified Number
In 6, enter ***00*** ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Viewing Current Print Settings
In 3, ◈ ***Check Settings*** ➡ ●

Advanced

☞ ●Adding Dates to Prints ●Creating an Index Print (**P.6-13**)

Camera

Start Here ➡ [Viewfinder] Photo Camera: P.6-4, Video Camera: P.6-5 [Image Save Window] P.6-4 [Save Menu] P.6-7 [Video Save Menu] P.6-5

Photo Camera & Video Camera

Adjusting Focus Quickly for Close-up Shots

[Viewfinder] ➡ *Shooting Settings* or *Record Settings* ➡ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ➡ *Macro* ➡

Adjusting Focus Manually

■ Photo Camera

[Photo Viewfinder] ➡ *Shooting Settings* ➡ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ➡ *Manual Focus* ➡ ➡ Adjust focus ➡

■ Video Camera

[Video Viewfinder] ➡ *Record Settings* ➡ ➡ *Focus Setting* ➡ ➡ *Manual Focus* ➡ ➡ Adjust focus ➡

- To readjust focus, press .

Locking Focus

[Viewfinder]

- To start over, press again.

Sending Images Wirelessly

■ Still Images

[Image Save Window] ➡ *Send* ➡ ➡ *Via Infrared* ➡

■ Panorama/Scanned Images

[Save Menu] *Send* ➡ ➡ *Send via IrDA* ➡

■ Video

[Video Save Menu] *Send* ➡ ➡ *Infrared* ➡

Photo Camera

Changing Image Size

[Photo Viewfinder] ➡ *Picture Size* ➡ ➡ Select size ➡

Changing Mode According to Lighting or Subject

[Photo Viewfinder] ➡ *Scene* ➡ ➡ Select mode ➡

Video Camera

Changing Recording Time/Size

[Video Viewfinder] ➡ *Record Time/Size* ➡ ➡ *For Message* or *Extended Video* ➡ ➡ Select size ➡

Image Editing & Printing

Start Here ➔ [Picture Editor Menu] P.6-8 [Composite Menu] P.6-8 [Photo Print Menu] P.6-11

Editing Images

Applying Visual Effects

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Retouch* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select effect ➔ ● ➔ ●

Adding Text

■ Text

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Paste* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *Free Text* ➔ ● ➔ Enter text ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Move text ➔ ●

■ Dates

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Paste* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *Date* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Move date ➔ ●

■ Outline

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Paste* ➔ ● ➔ ✉ ➔ ◈ Select text color ➔ ● ➔ ◈ ➔ ◈ Select outline color ➔ ● ➔ Y!

Adding Frames

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Frame* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select frame ➔ ● ➔ ●

Adding Stamps

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Stamp* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select stamp ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Move stamp ➔ ●

Correcting Image Parameters

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Correction* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select type ➔ ● ➔ ●

Rotating Images

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *Rotate* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select type ➔ ● ➔ ●

Converting File Format

[Picture Editor Menu] ◈ *File Format* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *File Format* or *File Size* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select format/size ➔ ●

- To return to Picture Editor menu, press CLEAR/BACK.
- Changing file format/size may affect file size/image quality.

Combining Reduced Images

[Composite Menu] ◈ *SplitPicture 240x320* or *SplitPicture 120x160* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *<Empty>* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ Select image ➔ ●

- Repeat from selecting ***<Empty>*** as needed.

DPOF

Adding Dates to Prints

[Photo Print Menu] ◈ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *Add Date* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *On* ➔ ●

Creating an Index Print

[Photo Print Menu] ◈ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *Index Print* ➔ ● ➔ ◈ *On* ➔ ●

7

Media Player & S! Applications

Media Basics

Use Media Player to play music/video on 830SH.

- Download media files from Mobile Internet sites via Media Player directly.
- Transfer PC music files and save them on Memory Card.

Features & File Support:

Music		Videos
My Music	**SD AUDIO**	**My Videos**
Handset/Memory Card Downloads/Transferred Files	**Memory Card** Transferred SD-Audio Files	**Handset** **Memory Card** Downloads/Recorded Files

SD-Video Files

- When using a Memory Card with SD-Video files recorded on other devices, open from ***SD VIDEO***.

Playback Precautions

- Media Player is not compatible with some recording/playback formats. Files may not play depending on the Memory Card status.
- Playback stops for incoming calls.
- When battery is low, Media Player will not play. If battery runs low during playback, Media Player shuts off.
- Turn down the volume if distortion is noticeable in Speaker sound.
- Handset plays media while it downloads (streaming); downloaded media cannot be saved. Packet transmission fees apply even while stream is paused.

Compatibility

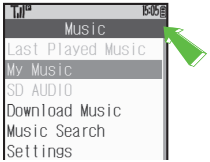
- Files transferred from PCs cannot be used as ringtones or System Sounds.

Obtaining Music

Downloading Music

Download music from the Internet.
Read information (price, expiry date, etc.) on the source site.

1. ● ➡ ✣ ***Media Player*** ➡ ●
2. ✣ ***Music*** ➡ ●



Music Menu

3. ✣ ***Download Music*** ➡ ●
   - Follow the links to download media.

Download via Music Search (Japanese)

In ❸, ✣ *Music Search* ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Saving Music Files from PCs

Convert PC music files to 830SH-compatible format (**P.13-20**), then save to corresponding Memory Card folder (**P.13-22**).

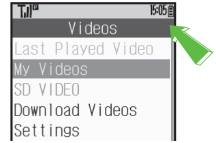
- Install Utility Software CD-ROM (Japanese) beforehand.
- Use software to convert music file format.
- For software usage and specifications, see the provider's website, etc.
- SoftBank does not guarantee compatibility with any software.
- USB Cable may be purchased separately.

Handling Transferred Files

- Copyright laws limit duplicated material to private use only.
- Files created with PC software, etc. may not play.
- Comply with copyright and other intellectual property laws when using obtained files.

Downloading Video

1. ● ➡ ✣ ***Media Player*** ➡ ●
2. ✣ ***Videos*** ➡ ●



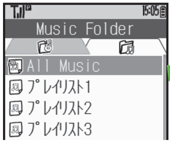
Videos Menu

3. ✣ ***Download Videos*** ➡ ●
   - Follow the links to download media.

Playing Music

1 ● ➡ ◎ ***Media Player*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Music*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***My Music*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select folder**



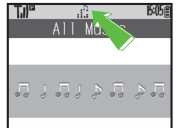
Music Playlists Window

3 ◎ ***All Music*** ➡ ●



Music File List

4 ◎ **Select file** ➡ ●



Music Playback Window

- Album art appears for compatible files.

Stopping Playback

While paused, CLEAR/BACK

Using Other Functions while Playing Music

After 4, CLEAR/BACK or ⌂

- To stop playback, follow these steps in Standby:

⌂ ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Playing SD AUDIO Files

In 2, ◎ ***SD AUDIO*** ➡ ● ➡ **From 3**

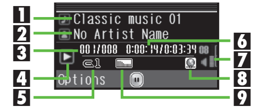
Searching Music Files

After 3, ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Search*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter search text** ➡ ●

Lyric Display-Compatible Files

- Press Y! to display lyrics.

Music Playback Window Indicators



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Artist name	7	Volume
3	Track number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Title and elapsed time appear on External Display during playback.

Music Playback Operations

Replay	◎ (Long Press: fast rewind*)
Skip Forward	◎ (Long Press: fast forward*)
Pause	●
Volume Down	◎ (Long Press: mute)
Volume Up or Cancel Mute	◎
Open Help	0

*Release for playback.

Advanced

Deleting SD AUDIO Files (**P.7-5**) Resuming from Stopped Point Playing Repeatedly or Randomly Changing Sound Effects Sorting Files (**P.7-13** - **7-14**)

Deleting Files

Delete other music files from Data Folder.

Deleting SD AUDIO Files

Single Files

[Music File List] Select file ➡ ➡ *Delete Track* ➡ ➡ *Yes* ➡

All Files

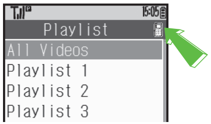
➡ *Media Player* ➡ ➡ *Music* ➡ ➡ *SD AUDIO* ➡ ➡ *All Music* ➡ ➡ *Del. All Tracks* ➡ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ➡ *Yes* ➡

- Source files will be deleted.

Playing Video

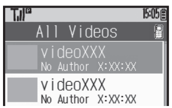
1 ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Videos* ➡ ●

2 *My Videos* ➡ ● ➡ *Phone Memory* or *Memory Card* ➡ ●



Video Playlists Window

3 *All Videos* ➡ ●



Video File List

4 Select file ➡ ●



Video Playback Window

5 CLEAR/BACK ➡ **Playback stops**

Toggling Display Size in Playback
[Video Playback Window] 2

Playing SD VIDEO Files
In 2, *SD VIDEO* ➡ ● ➡ 4

Searching Video Files
After 3, ✉ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter search text ➡ ●

At Alarm Time
- Playback stops.

Video Recorded on Other Devices
- Video image may appear rotated.

Video Playback Window Indicators



1	Title	6	Elapsed time
2	Author name	7	Volume
3	Clip number	8	Information link
4	Status	9	Sound Effects
5	Playback Mode		

Video Playback Operations

For pause, volume up/down or help, see **P.7-4** "Music Playback Operations."

Replay	(Long Press: fast rewind*)
Skip Forward	(Long Press: fast forward*, Long Press while paused: advance frame)

*Release for playback.

Advanced

Deleting SD VIDEO Files (**P.7-7**) Resuming from Stopped Point Playing Repeatedly or Randomly Changing Sound Effects Sorting Files (**P.7-13** - **7-14**)

Setting Backlight status Hiding linked information (**P.12-12**)

Deleting Files

Delete other video files from Data Folder.

Deleting SD VIDEO Files

● ➡ ✥ ***Media Player*** ➡ ● ➡ ✥ ***Videos*** ➡ ● ➡ ✥ ***SD VIDEO*** ➡ ● ➡ ✥ **Select file** ➡ ✉ ➡ ✥ ***Delete*** ➡ ● ➡ ✥ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

- Source files will be deleted.

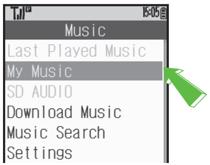
Using Playlists

Playlists store playback orders. Add favorite media files to Playlists, or organize files by artist/genre.
Playlists store only file locations. Source files remain in All Music or All Videos.

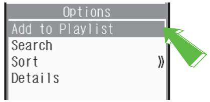
Adding to Playlist

Follow these steps to add a music file to *ﾌﾟﾚｲﾘｽﾄ1*:

1. ● ➡ *Media Player* ➡ ● ➡ *Music* ➡ ●



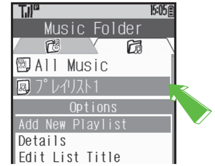
2. *My Music* ➡ ●
3. *All Music* ➡ ● ➡ Select file ➡ ✉



4. *Add to Playlist* ➡ ● ➡ *ﾌﾟﾚｲﾘｽﾄ1* ➡ ●

Renaming Playlists

1. In Playlists window, (select Playlist) ➡ ✉



2. *Edit List Title* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●



Advanced

- Adding New Playlists ● Deleting Playlist Files ● Deleting Playlists
- Changing File Order (**P.7-14**)

Crop

Some files may not be edited.

Clip Portions between Two Points

1 ● ➡ ✥ ***Media Player*** ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ ***Videos*** ➡ ●

2 ⇕ ***My Videos*** ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ ***Phone Memory*** **or** ***Memory Card*** ➡ ●

3 ⇕ **Select Playlist or** ***All Videos*** ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ **Select file** ➡ ●



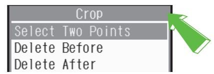
4 ✉ ➡ ⇕ ***Edit*** ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ ***Yes*** ➡ ●



Edit Menu

- Offline Mode is set. Handset transmissions are suspended until editing is complete.

5 ⇕ ***Crop*** ➡ ●



Crop Menu

6 ⇕ ***Select Two Points*** ➡ ●

- Video plays. Press ● to pause/start video.

7 **Press ✉ at start point**

8 **Press ✉ at end point**

- The portion between two points is saved and playback starts.

Delete Before/After

1 **In Crop menu,** ⇕ ***Delete Before*** **or** ***Delete After*** ➡ ●

- Video plays.

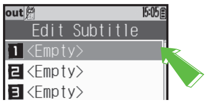
2 **Press ✉ at crop point**

- The portion before or after the selected point is deleted and playback starts.

Adding Subtitles

Adjust settings via Advanced. (Some effects cannot be applied at the same time.)
Follow these steps to add left-to-right scrolling text:

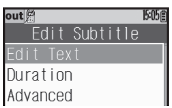
1 **In Edit menu, ◉ *Edit Subtitle* ➡ ◉**



2 **◉ *<Empty>* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter text ➡ ◉**

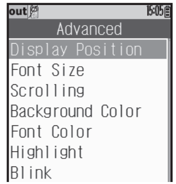
- Video plays. Press ◉ to pause/start video.

3 **Press ✉ at start point ➡ Press ✉ at end point**



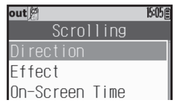
Edit Subtitle Menu

4 **◉ *Advanced* ➡ ◉**

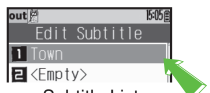


Advanced Menu

5 **◉ *Scrolling* ➡ ◉**



6 **◉ *Direction* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉ *Left to Right* ➡ ◉ ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ Y!**



Subtitle List

- To add more, repeat 2 - 6.

7 **Y!**

8 **◉ *Create New* ➡ ◉**

Changing Start/End Point
After 3, ◉ *Duration* ➡ ◉ ➡ ✉ at start point ➡ ✉ at end point

Editing Subtitles

Editing Text

Before Saving Text

[Edit Subtitle Menu] ◉ *Edit Text* ➡ ◉ ➡ Edit text ➡ ◉

After Saving Text

[Subtitle List] ◉ Select entry ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉ *Edit Text* ➡ ◉ ➡ Edit text ➡ ◉ ➡ Y!

Deleting Subtitles

[Subtitle List] ◉ Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ ◉ *Delete* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉ *Yes* ➡ ◉

Using S! Applications

Try out the preloaded S! Applications or download and use 830SH-compatible S! Applications, including games.
Refer to the S! Application's help menu or the source Internet site, etc. for operational instructions.

1 ● ➡ ✥ ***S! Appli*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***S! Appli Library*** ➡ ●



S! Appli Library

3 ◎ **Select application** ➡ ●

Network S! Applications

- A message appears indicating that Internet connection is required. Follow onscreen instructions.

Incoming Calls

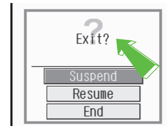
- Incoming calls automatically pause S! Application.

Opening S! Appli Request Log

In **2**, ◎ ***Demand History*** ➡ ●

Exiting S! Applications

1 [⏻]



2 ◎ ***End*** ➡ ●

Pausing S! Applications

[⏻] ➡ ◎ ***Suspend*** ➡ ●

Resuming S! Applications

● ➡ ◎ ***Resume*** ➡ ●

- Select ***Cancel*** to open Main Menu and keep the S! Application paused.
- Select ***End*** to end the S! Application.

Advanced

● Downloading S! Applications ● Setting S! Application to Activate in Standby ● Deleting S! Applications (**P.7-12**)

● Adjusting S! Application sound volume ● Showing incoming transmission notice ● Pausing S! Application for incoming mail ● Setting handset to show notice at Alarm Time ● Showing incoming S! Appli Request notice ● Changing Screensaver Activation Time ● Restoring default S! Application settings ● Restoring default S! Appli Library (**P.12-12**)

Downloading S! Applications

[S! Appli Library] ◎ *Download* ➡ ●

- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting S! Application to Activate in Standby

Activating Screensaver

● ➡ ◎ *S! Appli* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Screensaver* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ●

Setting Screensaver

[S! Appli Library] ◎ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *As Screensaver* ➡ ●

- ***As Screensaver*** appears for compatible S! Applications.
- Screensaver may not start or operate correctly when an external device (Headphones, etc.) is connected to handset.

Deleting S! Applications

[S! Appli Library] ◎ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

- Handset Code may be required.
- Cancel Screensaver to delete Screensaver S! Application.

Additional Functions (Media) 1

Start Here ➔ [Menu] Music: P.7-3, Video: P.7-3 [Playback Window] Music: P.7-4, Video: P.7-6

Music/Video Playback

Resuming from Stopped Point

[Menu] ◎ *Last Played Music* or *Last Played Video* ➔ ●

Music Playback

Playing Repeatedly or Randomly

■ Play Randomly

[Music Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Random* ➔ ●

■ Repeat Randomly

[Music Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Random Repeat* ➔ ●

■ Repeat One File

[Music Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Repeat* ➔ ●

■ Repeat All Files

[Music Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Repeat All* ➔ ●

Changing Sound Effects

[Music Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Sound Effects* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select effect ➔ ●

Video Playback

- Available for My Videos files only.

Playing Repeatedly or Randomly

■ Play Randomly

[Video Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Random* ➔ ●

■ Repeat One File

[Video Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Repeat* ➔ ●

■ Repeat All Files

[Video Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Playback Mode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Repeat All* ➔ ●

Changing Sound Effects

[Video Playback Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Sound Effects* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select effect ➔ ●

Additional Functions (Media) 2

Start Here ➔ [File List] Music: P.7-4, Video: P.7-6 [Playlists Window] Music: P.7-4, Video: P.7-6

Managing Files

Sorting Files

[File List] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Sort* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select option ➔ ●

Playlists

Adding New Playlists

[Playlists Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Add New Playlist* ➔ ● ➔ Enter name ➔ ●

Deleting Playlist Files

[Playlists Window] ◎ Select Playlist ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select file ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *Delete* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Yes* ➔ ●

Deleting Playlists

[Playlists Window] ◎ Select Playlist ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *Delete Playlist* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Yes* ➔ ●

Changing File Order

[Playlists Window] ◎ Select Playlist ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select file ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *Change Order* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Move file ➔ ●

8 Handy Extras

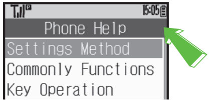
Phone Help

Access this handy guide to handset settings and key functions/shortcuts.

1. ● ➡ Tools ➡ ● ➡ *Doc./Rec. Tools*

   Tools, ***Doc./Rec. Tools***

2. ***Phone Help*** ➡ ●



3. **Select item** ➡ ●
   - Toggle guides as needed.

Calendar

Opening Calendar

1 ● ➡ ◈ ***Tools*** ➡ ● ➡ **In PIM/LifestyleTools menu,** ⊙ ***Calendar*** ➡ ●



Calendar Window

Key Assignments

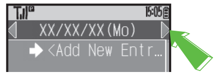
*	Open previous page	8	Go to (Enter Date)
#	Open next page	9	Find (By Category)
2	Stamp[1]	0	Help
4	Set Color	Y!	Toggle view
5	Go to (Today)	⊙ (up/down)	Select week[2]
6	Find (By Subject)	⊙ (left/right)	Select date

[1] Available in Month View.
[2] In Week View, select time block.

Saving Schedules

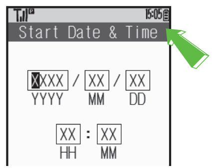
Follow these steps to save subject, start/end date/time, Alarm and schedule details: Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

1 **In Calendar window,** ◈ **(select date)** ➡ ●

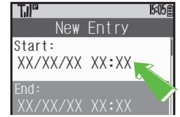


2 ⊙ ***<Add New Entry>*** ➡ ●

3 **Enter subject** ➡ ●



4 **Enter start date/time** ➡ ●



Schedule Entry Window

5 ⊙ ***End:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter end date/time** ➡ ●

6 ⊙ ***Alarm:*** ➡ ●

7 ⊙ ***Alarm Time:*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ **Select time** ➡ ● ➡ Y!

8 ⊙ ***Description:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter schedule details** ➡ ●

9 Y! ➡ **Saved**

All-Day Schedule
In 4, ✉ ➡ ● ➡ **From 8**

Custom Alarm Time
In 7, ⊙ ***Alarm Time:*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Other*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter date/time** ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ **From 8**

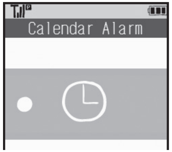
Advanced

Changing Date Color · Changing Alarm Tone/Video · Hiding Entries · Saving Repetitive Schedules (**P.8-29**)

8 Handy Extras

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop Alarm, press a key.

Opening Schedule
While Alarm sounds/vibrates, [Y!]
When Another Function is Active
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls
- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Schedules/Tasks

1. **In Calendar window, [Multi] (select date) ➡ [Center]**



Schedule List

2. **[Select] Select schedule or task ➡ [Center]**
3. **[CLEAR/BACK] ➡ List returns**

Opening Task List
In 2, [Select] (select task) ➡ [Mail] ➡ [Select] *Go to Tasks* ➡ [Center]

Opening Related Message
After 2, [Mail] ➡ [Select] *Related Mail* ➡ [Center]

Deleting Message from Schedule
After 2, [Center] ➡ [Select] *Related Mail:* ➡ [Center] ➡ [Select] *Yes* ➡ [Center] ➡ [Y!]

Accessing Secret Entries
[Calendar Window] [Mail] ➡ [Select] *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ [Center] ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ [Center]

Deleting Schedules

One Entry

1. **In schedule list, [Select] (select schedule) ➡ [Mail]**
2. **[Select] *Delete* ➡ [Center]**
3. **[Select] *This Appointment* ➡ [Center] ➡ [Select] *Yes* ➡ [Center]**

All Entries of the Day

1. **In Calendar window, [Multi] (select date) ➡ [Mail]**
2. **[Select] *Delete* ➡ [Center] ➡ [Select] *All This Day* ➡ [Center] ➡ [Select] *Yes* ➡ [Center]**

8 Handy Extras

Advanced

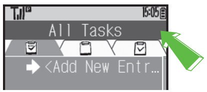
Editing Schedules · Deleting All Schedules (**P.8-29 - 8-30**)

Tasks

Saving Tasks

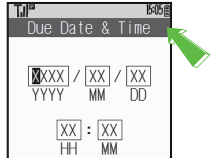
Follow these steps to save subject, due date/time, Alarm and task details:
Either Subject or Description must be saved per entry.

1. ● ➡ ✣ ***Tools*** ➡ ● ➡ **In PIM/LifestyleTools menu,** ⇕ ***Tasks*** ➡ ●

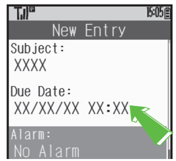


2. ⇕ ***<Add New Entry>*** ➡ ●

3. **Enter subject** ➡ ●

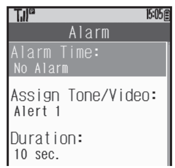


4. **Enter due date/time** ➡ ●



Task Entry Window

5. ⇕ ***Alarm:*** ➡ ●



6. ⇕ ***Alarm Time:*** ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ **Select time** ➡ ● ➡ Y!

7. ⇕ ***Description:*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter task details** ➡ ●

8. Y! ➡ **Saved**

Task with No Due Date/Time
In 4, ✉ ➡ ● ➡ From 7

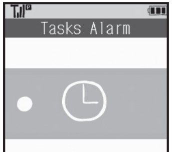
Custom Alarm Time
In 6, ⇕ *Alarm Time:* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Other* ➡ ● ➡ Enter date/time ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ From 7

Advanced

●Changing Alarm Tone/Video ●Hiding Entries (**P.8-29**)

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop Alarm, press a key.

Opening Task

While Alarm sounds/vibrates, Y!

When Another Function is Active

- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls

- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

Opening Tasks

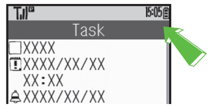
1. ● ➡ ◎ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, ◎ *Tasks* ➡ ●



Task List

- Use ◎ to open completed or uncompleted task list.

2. ◎ Select task ➡ ●



3. CLEAR/BACK ➡ List returns

Accessing Secret Entries

After 1, ✉ ➡ ◎ *Unlock Temporarily* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Marking Tasks as Completed

After 1, ◎ (select task) ➡ Y!

Deleting Tasks

One Entry

1. In task list, ◎ (select task) ➡ ✉
2. ◎ *Delete* ➡ ●
3. ◎ *This Task* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

All Completed Tasks

1. In task list, ✉
2. ◎ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *All Comp. Tasks* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

8 Handy Extras

Advanced

Editing Tasks Deleting All Tasks (**P.8-29** - **8-30**)

Using Alarms

Setting Alarm

Follow these steps to set Alarm to sound at a specific time on a specific day of the week:
Set Snooze (Alarm repeats at set interval), Alarm Volume and Duration.

1. ● ➡ Tools ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, *Alarms* ➡ ●



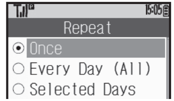
Alarm List

2. --:-- ➡ ● ➡ Enter hour (24-hour format) ➡ Enter minutes ➡ ●



Alarm Menu

3. *Repeat:* ➡ ●



4. *Selected Days* ➡ ●



5. Select day ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ Y!
6. *Snooze:* ➡ ●
7. Select interval ➡ ●
   - For custom intervals, select *Other*.
8. *Alarm Volume:* ➡ ●
9. Adjust level ➡ ●
10. *Duration:* ➡ ●
11. Select time ➡ ●
    - For custom Duration, select *Other*.
12. Y! ➡ Saved
    - For more settings, repeat 2 - 12.
13. [power key] ➡ Alarm setting ends

Selecting/Canceling All Days
In 5, ✉ ➡ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Excluding Holidays
In 5, (select day) ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ *Except Holidays* ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ From 6

Activating Alarm Once or Daily
In 4, *Once* or *Every Day (All)* ➡ ● ➡ From 6

Advanced

●Saving Entry Name ●Changing Alarm Tone/Video ●Setting Handset to Vibrate at Alarm Time (**P.8-30**)

8 Handy Extras

At Alarm Time

Alarm activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop Alarm, press a key.

When Another Function is Active
- Alarm may not activate until handset returns to Standby.

Incoming Calls
- Active Alarm stops for incoming calls. Information window opens after handset returns to Standby.

When Snooze is Set

Alarm repeats at the set interval. Other Alarms do not activate while handset is Snoozing.

Canceling Snooze
While Snoozing, (●) ➡ (⇕) *Yes* ➡ (●)
- Snooze is automatically canceled after a period of time.

Canceling Alarm

1. **In Alarm list, (⇕) (select entry) ➡ (✉)**
2. **(⇕) *Switch Off* ➡ (●)**
   - Reactivate entry to use the same settings.

Reactivating Entry
In 2, (⇕) *Switch On* ➡ (●)

Deleting Alarm

One Entry

1. **In Alarm list, (⇕) (select entry) ➡ (✉)**
2. **(⇕) *Reset Alarm* ➡ (●)**
3. **(⇕) *Yes* ➡ (●)**

All Entries

1. **In Alarm list, (⇕) (select entry) ➡ (✉) ➡ (⇕) *Clear All* ➡ (●)**
2. **Enter Handset Code ➡ (●) ➡ (⇕) *Yes* ➡ (●)**

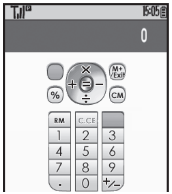
Advanced

Editing Entries (**P.8-30**)

Sounding Alarm Time tone even in Manner mode · Activating Alarm based on World Clock time (**P.12-13**)

Using Calculator

1 → → *Tools* → → In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, *Calculator* →



Calculator Window

2 Use Keypad to enter digits → Calculate

- Clear Memory before starting new Memory calculations.

3 → **Calculator ends**

Key Assignments

+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
x (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Sum)	
C.CE (Clear)	
CM (Clear Memory)	
RM (Recall Memory)	
M+ (Add to Memory)	
. (Decimal)	
+/- (Positive/Negative Value)	
% (Percentage)	

Memory Calculation

- Numbers saved in Memory are cleared when handset power is turned off.

Incoming Calls

- Calculations are not affected. End the call to return to Calculator.

Using % Function

Use to find definite percentage of a known value.

Example: Calculate 30% of 800,000

Enter *800,000* → *x* → *30* → *%*

■ ***240,000*** appears.

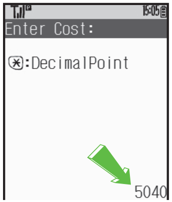
Advanced

Copying Calculation Results, Changing Exchange Rate for Currency Conversion, Converting Currencies (**P.8-30**)

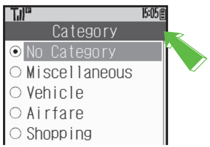
Adding Expenses

Entering Expenses

1 Enter amount ➡ ◎



2 ◉

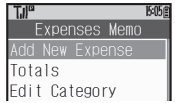


3 ◎ Select Category ➡ ◉ ➡ Saved

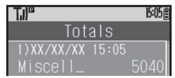
Saving under Custom Category
In 3, ◎ *Other* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter name ➡ ◉

Checking Entries

1 ◉ ➡ ◎ *Tools* ➡ ◉ ➡ In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, ◎ *Expenses Memo* ➡ ◉



2 ◎ *Totals* ➡ ◉



Expenses Memo List

3 CLEAR/BACK ➡ Menu returns

Saving Entries to Notepad
[Expenses Memo List] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Save to Notepad* ➡ ◉

Deleting Entries

■ **One Entry**

1 In Expenses Memo list, ◎ (select entry) ➡ ✉

2 ◎ *Delete Item* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉

■ **All Entries**

1 In Expenses Memo list, ✉ ➡ ◎ *Delete All* ➡ ◉

2 Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉

Advanced

●Changing Category of Saved Entry ●Changing Amount (**P.8-31**)

Osaifu-Keitai® (Japanese)

Osaifu-Keitai® describes IC Card-equipped handsets that support e-money or credit functions/services. Osaifu-Keitai® encompasses a range of IC Card-based services on FeliCa-compatible SoftBank handsets. 830SH supports Osaifu-Keitai®. To use e-money, e-ticketing and reward points, etc., hold handset over a compatible reader/writer at shops, restaurants, and other retail outlets, etc.

Basics

Before using Osaifu-Keitai®, activate Lifestyle-Appli, complete registration, customize settings and charge accounts.

Starting Lifestyle-Appli

● ➡ ✣ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/ LifestyleTools menu, ◎ *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Lifestyle-Appli* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select application ➡ ●

Lifestyle-Appli Precautions

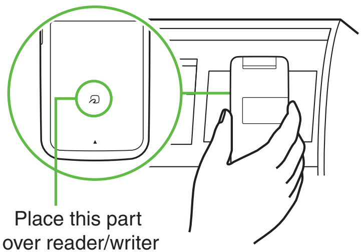
- Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for Lifestyle-Appli registration and usage details.
- Keep service passwords/customer service contact information, etc. in a separate place.

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Follow these steps to conduct a transaction:
Example: Making an electronic payment

- Complete transactions without activating a Lifestyle-Appli. Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

1 Place logo over reader/ writer ➡ Confirm scan results



- Align handset parallel to reader/writer.

Important Osaifu-Keitai® Usage Note

SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of IC Card data/settings.

When Placed Over Sensor

- If recognition is slow, move handset around slightly.
- Handset may respond automatically for some services.

Advanced

●Enabling to View E-Money Balances ●Moving Applications Up/Down Balance Info List ●Removing Applications from Balance Info List ●Checking E-Money Balance on External Display (**P.8-31**)

●Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings (**P.12-13**)

Locking IC Card

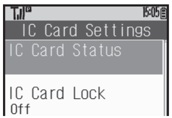
IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to/prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai® on handset.

1. ● ➡ ✣ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, ↕ *Osaifu-Keitai* ➡ ●



2. ↕ *IC Card Settings* ➡ ●



IC Card Settings Menu

3. ↕ *IC Card Lock* ➡ ● ➡ ↕ *On* ➡ ●
4. Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ↕ *Yes* ➡ ●

Canceling IC Card Lock
In 3, ↕ *IC Card Lock* ➡ ● ➡ ↕ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

Remote Lock

Disable Osaifu-Keitai® remotely by mail or phone.

Mail Remote Lock	Send mail to activate Remote Lock
Call Remote Lock	Call from a specified phone to activate Remote Lock

Mail Remote Lock

■ Preparation on Handset

1. In IC Card Settings menu, ↕ *Remote Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●



2. ↕ *Mail Remote Lock* ➡ ●



Mail Remote Lock Menu

3. ↕ *Remote Lock PW* ➡ ●
4. Enter password ➡ ●
5. ↕ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ●
6. ↕ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Canceling Mail Remote Lock
In 6, ↕ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

■ Activating Remote Lock via Mail

If handset cannot receive mail IC Card Lock is not set.

1. Send S! Mail or e-mail to handset with password as subject
   - Leave other fields blank.
   - After handset receives message, IC Card Lock is set and notice is sent as a reply.

Advanced

● Changing IC Card Lock Notice Recipient (**P.8-31**)

Call Remote Lock

Preparation on Handset

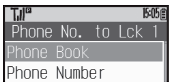
1 **In IC Card Settings menu, *Remote Lock* → Enter Handset Code →**

2 ***Call Remote Lock* →**



Call Remote Lock Menu

3 ***Phone No. to Lck 1* or *Phone No. to Lck 2* →**



4 ***Phone Book* → → Select entry → → Select phone number →**

- Select ***Phone Number*** to enter directly.

5 ***Switch On/Off* →**

6 ***On* → →**

Enabling Activation via Public Phone

In 3, *Set Public Phone* → → *On* → → From 5

Canceling Call Remote Lock

In 6, *Off* → →

Activating Remote Lock via Phone

If handset cannot receive calls IC Card Lock is not set.

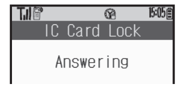
1 **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**

- Send Caller ID.

2 **Handset receives call → End the call**

- The call is recorded as a Missed Call.

3 **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**



- After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces Remote Lock activation. Confirm the message and end the call.

If Series is Interrupted by Another Call

- Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

Advanced

Changing Required Missed Call Count for Call Remote Lock (**P.8-31**)

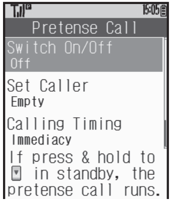
Faking Incoming Calls

Handset rings to emulate an incoming call.

- Pretense Call ringtone is fixed.
- Ringer may be muted by handset settings. To override Silent setting, see **P.8-32**.

Setting Pretense Call

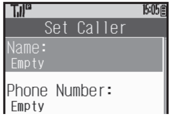
1 ● ➡ ✣ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, ⇕ *Pretense Call* ➡ ●



Pretense Call Menu

2 ⇕ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *On* ➡ ●

3 ⇕ *Set Caller* ➡ ●



4 ⇕ *Name:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter name ➡ ●

5 ⇕ *Phone Number:* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ Y!

6 Y! ➡ PIM/LifestyleTools menu returns

When Name and Phone Number are Unset

- Handset rings with Caller ID "Withheld."

Canceling Pretense Call

[Pretense Call Menu] ⇕ *Switch On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Using Pretense Call

1 ▶ (Long)

- Available regardless of handset position.
- Handset rings and incoming Voice Call window opens.
- Ringtone stops after a period of time.

2 In incoming Voice Call window, press [key]

- Voice Call window opens. (Softkeys are dummies.)

3 [end key] ➡ Pretense Call ends

Setting Wait Time

[Pretense Call Menu] ⇕ *Calling Timing* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ Select time ➡ ● ➡ Y!

When Calling Timing is Not *Immediacy*

- Press [end key] or [CLEAR/BACK] during wait time to cancel Pretense Call activation.
- Pretense Call activation is canceled by incoming calls, Alarms, etc. during wait time.

8 Handy Extras

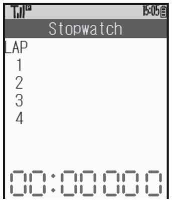
Advanced

Clearing Caller Information Overriding Silent Volume Setting (**P.8-32**)

Using Stopwatch

Stopwatch stops when battery runs low.

1. ◉ ➡ ✣ ***Tools*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ⇔ ***Timer/Clock Tools*** ➡ ⇕ ***Stopwatch*** ➡ ◉



Stopwatch Window

2. ◉ ➡ **Stopwatch starts**
3. ◉ ➡ **Stopwatch stops**
   - Press ◉ to resume.
4. ⏻ ➡ ⇕ ***Yes*** ➡ ◉ ➡ **Stopwatch ends**
   - Records are deleted when Stopwatch ends.

Recording Lap Times

While Stopwatch is running, ✉

Saving Records to Notepad

After 3, ✉ ➡ ⇕ *Save to Notepad* ➡ ◉

Resetting Records

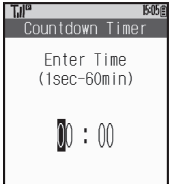
After 3, ✉ ➡ ⇕ *Reset* ➡ ◉ ➡ From 2

Incoming Calls

- Stopwatch is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

Using Countdown Timer

1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ *Timer/Clock Tools* ➡ ● *Countdown Timer* ➡ ●



Timer Entry Window

2 **Enter minutes ➡ Enter seconds ➡ ●**



Countdown Timer Window

- Press ✉ to change time.

3 ● ➡ **Countdown starts**

- Press ● to stop/resume countdown.

4 **Set time elapses ➡ Tone sounds**

5 ☎ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ **Countdown Timer ends**

Resetting Timer

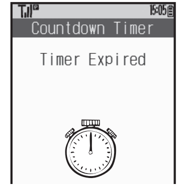
Stop countdown and ✉

Incoming Calls

- Countdown is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

When Set Time Elapses

Tone sounds.



To stop tone instantly, press Y! or a Side Key. (Tone stops automatically after a period of time.)

When Timer Time Elapsed during a Call

- Tone sounds after the call.

Opening World Clock

1. ● ➡ ✥ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Timer/Clock Tools* ➡ ⊙ *World Clock* ➡ ●



2. ●



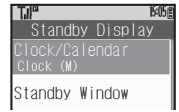
Set Time Zone Window

3. ⊙ Select area ➡ ●
4. ⌂ ➡ World Clock ends

Advancing One Hour (Daylight Saving)
[Set Time Zone Window] ⓨ
- To cancel, press ⓨ.

Opening World Clock in Standby

1. ● ➡ ✥ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, ⊙ *Display* ➡ ●
2. ⊙ *Standby Display* ➡ ●



3. ⊙ *Clock/Calendar* ➡ ●
4. ⊙ *World Clock (L)*, etc. ➡ ●

Advanced

Adding Custom Time Zone (**P.8-33**)

Using Hour Minder

Setting Hour Minder

Follow these steps to activate the hourly time signal at selected hours:

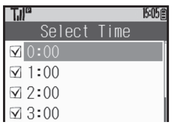
1. ● ➡ ⊙ ***Tools*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Timer/Clock Tools*** ➡ ⊙ ***Hour Minder*** ➡ ●



Hour Minder Menu

2. ⊙ ***Switch On/Off*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***On*** ➡ ●

3. ⊙ ***Select Time*** ➡ ●



4. ⊙ **Select hour** ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ **Complete selection** ➡ Ⓨ!

5. Ⓨ! ➡ **Saved**

6. [⏻] ➡ **Hour Minder setting ends**

Adjusting Hour Minder Volume

In 2, ⊙ ***Advanced*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Volume:*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ **Adjust level** ➡ ● ➡ Ⓨ! ➡ **From 5**

Changing Hour Minder Duration

In 2, ⊙ ***Advanced*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Duration:*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ **Select time** ➡ ● ➡ Ⓨ! ➡ **From 5**

■ For custom Duration, select *Other*.

Selecting/Canceling All Hours

In 4, ✉ ➡ ⊙ ***Check All*** **or** ***Uncheck All*** ➡ ●

At Hour Minder Time

Hour Minder activates; sounds/vibrates by related settings.



To stop tone instantly, press a key.

When Another Function is Active

- Hour Minder does not activate.

Incoming Calls

- Active Hour Minder stops for incoming calls.

Canceling Hour Minder

1. **In Hour Minder menu,** ⊙ ***Switch On/Off*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Off*** ➡ ● ➡ Ⓨ!

Advanced

● Changing Hour Minder Tone/Video ● Setting Handset to Vibrate at Hour Minder Time (**P.8-33**)

● Sounding Hour Minder Time tone even in Manner mode ● Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time (**P.12-13**)

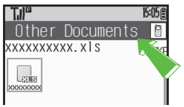
Opening PC Documents

Supported File Formats:

PDF (.pdf)
Microsoft® Excel® (.xls)
Microsoft® Word (.doc)
Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)

- Some files may not appear correctly.
- Download files via the Internet.
- When transferring files from PCs, save to corresponding Memory Card folder (**P.13-22**).

1 ● ➡ ⦿ ***Tools*** ➡ ● ➡ ⦿ ***Doc./Rec. Tools*** ➡ ⦿ ***Document Viewer*** ➡ ●



2 ⦿ **Select file** ➡ ●

Key Assignments

●	View whole page
⦿	Scroll
1	View upper left
2	Toggle full screen view on/off
3	View upper right
4/▶	Zoom out
4 (Long) ▶ (Long)	Continuous zoom out
5	View center
6/◀	Zoom in
6 (Long) ◀ (Long)	Continuous zoom in
7	View lower left
8	Jump to page
9	View lower right
0	Open Help
#	Next page
＊	Previous page
↶	Fit width
Y!	Rotate 90°

Zooming In/Out with Loupe (Magnifier)
In open file, ⦿ (Long) ➡ ⦿ Select portion ➡ ✉ ➡ ⦿ *Zoom Out* or *Zoom In* ➡ ●

Saving Text

New Notepad Entry

1 ● ➡ Tools ➡ ● ➡ *Doc./Rec. Tools* ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ●



Notepad List

2 *<Add New Entry>* ➡ ●



3 Enter text ➡ ●

4 Select Category ➡ ● ➡ Saved

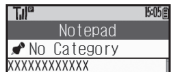
Sorting Entries Temporarily

[Notepad List] Y!

- Press Y! repeatedly to toggle sort options (Modified, Created, Category and Accessed).

Opening Notepad

1 In Notepad list, (select entry) ➡ ●



2 CLEAR/BACK ➡ List returns

Deleting Entries

One Entry

1 In Notepad list, (select entry) ➡ ✉

2 *Delete Item* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

All Entries

1 In Notepad list, (select entry) ➡ ✉ ➡ *Setting/Manage* ➡ ●

2 *Delete All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●

Advanced

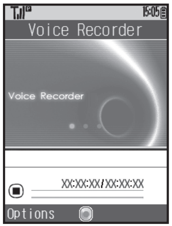
● Editing Notepad ● Searching Text within All Entries ● Inserting Notepad Text into Message Text ● Sending Notepad Entries via S! Mail ● Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry (**P.8-34**)

Recording/Playing Voice

Recording

- If battery runs low while recording, Voice Recorder shuts off.
- Record conversations during calls via ***Record Caller Voice*** (**P.3-11**).

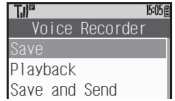
1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Tools*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Doc./Rec. Tools*** ➡ ⊙ ***Voice Recorder*** ➡ ●



Recording Window

2 ● ➡ **Recording starts**

3 ● ➡ **Recording stops**



- For ***Extended Voice***, recording is saved automatically.

4 ⊙ ***Save*** ➡ ●

Play Before Saving

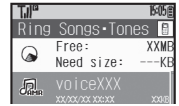
In 4, ⊙ *Playback* ➡ ● ➡ Playback starts ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ Playback stops

Starting Over

In 4, CLEAR/BACK ➡ From 2

Playback

1 **In recording window,** ✉ ➡ ⊙ ***Ring Songs·Tones*** ➡ ●



2 ⊙ **Select file** ➡ ●

- Use ⊙ to adjust volume.
- Press ● to pause/resume. Press CLEAR/BACK to stop playback.

Playing Data Folder Files

● ➡ ✣ ***Data Folder*** ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ ***Ring Songs·Tones*** ➡ ● ➡ ✣ **Select file** ➡ ●

Advanced

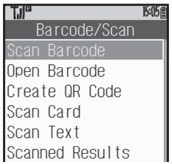
Saving Longer Recordings · Sending Voice Files via S! Mail · Switching Storage Media (**P.8-34**)

Scanning Printed Barcodes

Scan UPC/JAN (1D barcodes) or QR Codes (2D barcodes).

- Membership file or password may be required when scanning barcodes.
- Some barcodes may not be scanned.

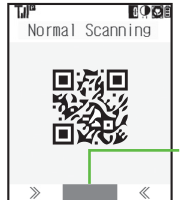
1 ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ *Doc./Rec. Tools* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ●



Barcode/Scan Menu

2 *Scan Barcode* ➡ ●

3 Frame barcode in center of Display



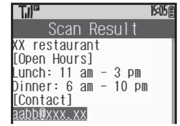
Scan Window

- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

4 ● ➡ **Scan starts**

- If recognition takes time, slowly adjust the distance between handset and barcode.
- Press Y! to stop scan.

5 Tone sounds ➡ Scan results appear



Barcode Scan Results Window

Key Assignments in Scan Window

- 3: **Toggle focus mode**
- **: Focus Lock**
- **: Adjust brightness**
- 0: **Open Help**

Split Data

- After scanning, confirmation appears. Follow onscreen prompt(s).
- Scan results do not appear until all split data is scanned.

Starting Over

After 5, Y! ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From 3

Advanced

Scanning during Text Entry · Reading Saved Barcode Images · Using Linked Info · Saving Scan Results · Opening Saved Scan Results · Using Images as Wallpaper · Saving Linked Info to Phone Book · Saving Images & Melodies · Opening or Playing Files · Using Images for System Graphics · Saving to Notepad · Pasting to Message Text · Copying Text (**P.8-35** - **8-36**)

Creating QR Codes

Create QR Codes from these items on handset:

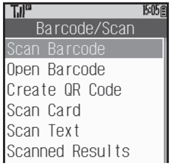
Phone Book	Text Input
Ring Songs·Tones	Pictures
Notepad	

Large items are divided into multiple QR Codes.

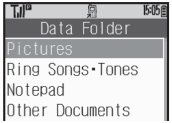
Procedure

Follow these steps to create QR codes from Data Folder files:

1. ● ➡ ***Tools*** ➡ ● ➡ ***Doc./Rec. Tools*** ➡ ***Barcode/Scan*** ➡ ●



2. ***Create QR Code*** ➡ ●
3. ***Data Folder*** ➡ ●



4. **Select folder** ➡ ● ➡ **Select file or entry** ➡ ●
   - QR Code is created.
5. ●
   - QR Code is saved to Data Folder (Pictures).

From Phone Book Entries
In 3, ***Phone Book*** ➡ ● ➡ **Select entry** ➡ ● ➡ 5

From Entered Text
In 3, ***Text Input*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ● ➡ 5

Switching Storage Media
In 5, ➡ ***Save to*** ➡ ● ➡ ***Phone*** **or** ***Memory Card*** ➡ ● ➡ ●

Attaching to S! Mail
In 5, ➡ ***Send As*** ➡ ● ➡ **Complete message** ➡

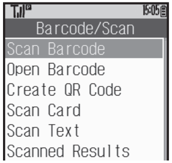
Incoming Calls
- QR Code creation is not affected by incoming calls. End the call to return.

8 Handy Extras

Scanning Business Cards

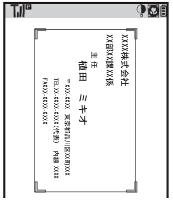
Scan business cards and save names, addresses, etc. to Phone Book.
- English business cards may not be scanned correctly.
- Some cards may not be scanned.

1 ● ➡ ✥ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Doc./Rec. Tools* ➡ ◎ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ●



2 ◎ *Scan Card* ➡ ●

3 **Frame card on Display**



Scan Window

4 ●
- Press Y! to stop scan.

5 ● ➡ **Scan results appear**



Card Scan Results Window

6 ● ➡ Y!
- New Phone Book entry is saved.

Key Assignments in Scan Window
- 3 : **Toggle focus mode**
- ↶ : **Focus Lock**
- ⊙ : **Adjust brightness**
- 0 : **Open Help**

If Text Exceeds Phone Book Entry Item Character Limit
- Confirmation appears. Follow these steps to delete overage:
  ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Starting Over
After 5, Y! ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From 3

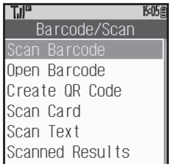
Advanced

Saving to Notepad / Pasting to Message Text / Copying Text (**P.8-36**)

Scanning Text

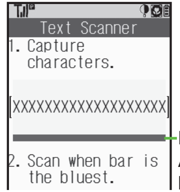
Scan text (URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers or alphanumerics).
Some text cannot be scanned.

1. ● ➡ *Tools* ➡ ● ➡ *Doc./Rec. Tools* ➡ *Barcode/Scan* ➡ ●



2. *Scan Text* ➡ ●

3. **Frame text in center of Display**



Scan Window

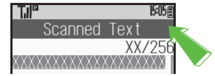
- Adjust to frame text in [ ].
- Use Focus Adjustment Bar as a guide (better focus in darker blue).

4. ●

- Press Y! to stop scan.

5. **Select line ➡ ● ➡ Scan results appear**

6. ●



Scanned Text Window

Key Assignments in Scan Window

3: Toggle focus mode
Focus Lock
Adjust brightness
0: Open Help

For White Text on Black Background
In 3, ✉ ➡ *Reversed Text* ➡ ● ➡ *Reversed* ➡ ● ➡ From 4

Correcting Text Type
After 5, ✉ ➡ *Change Mode* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ● ➡ 6

Editing Scanned Text
After 5, ✉ ➡ *Select/Edit* ➡ ● ➡ Select text ➡ Select alternative from list or edit directly ➡ 6

Starting Over
In 6, Y! ➡ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ From 3

Advanced

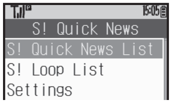
Scanning during Text Entry ● Using Linked Info ● Saving Scan Results ● Opening Saved Scan Results ● Saving Linked Info to Phone Book ● Saving to Notepad ● Pasting to Message Text ● Copying Text
(**P.8-35** - **8-36**)

Receiving Content Updates (Japanese)

View content updates or breaking news. Transmission fees apply.

Registering S! Quick News Items

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Quick News* ➡ ●



S! Quick News Menu

2. *S! Quick News List* ➡ ●



S! Quick News List

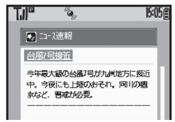
3. *登録はこちら* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
   - Handset connects to the Internet.

4. **Select item** ➡ ●
   - Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening Information

1. **In S! Quick News List, (select item)** ➡ ●
   - Title list appears.

2. **Select title** ➡ ●



- Press ✉ to return to item list, or Y! to open next title.

Updating Items Manually

[S! Quick News List] Select item ➡ Y! ➡ *更新* ➡ ● ➡ *一件* or *全件* ➡ ●

Indicators

[icon]	Unread Special news
[icon]	Read Special news
[icon]	Unread News Flash
[icon]	Read News Flash
[icon]	Unread General news
[icon]	Read General news
[icon]	Auto update disabled

Advanced

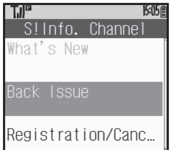
- Receiving S! Loop Item Updates
- Updating List Automatically
- Checking Update Schedule
- Changing Background Image
- Deleting S! Quick News Items (**P.8-37**)

S! Information Channel & Weather Indicator (Japanese)

Transmission fees apply.

Service Registration & Content Subscription

1 ◉ ➡ ✧ ***Entertainment*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ✧ ***S! Information Channel/Weather*** ➡ ◉



S! Information Channel Menu

2 ✧ ***Registration/Cancel*** ➡ ◉

- Handset connects to the Internet. Follow onscreen instructions.

New Received Information

Information window opens for new S! Information Channel info delivery.

1 **While Information window appears,** ✧ ***S! Info. Channel*** ➡ ◉

- S! Information Channel page opens. Follow onscreen instructions.
- S! Information Channel page handling is similar to that of Yahoo! Keitai.

2 [☏] ➡ **Page closes**

Opening Unread Latest Issue
[S! Information Channel Menu] ✧ ***What's New*** ➡ ◉

Opening Back Issues
[S! Information Channel Menu] ✧ ***Back Issue*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ✧ **Select date** ➡ ◉

Using Weather Indicator

After S! Information Channel registration, local area weather indicator appears in Standby.

☀	Clear skies (day)	☃	Snow
☽	Clear skies (night)	⚡	Thunder showers
☁	Cloudy	⇒	Then
☂	Rain	/	Partly/chance of

Example: ☁/☂ ➡ Partly cloudy with a chance of rain

Indicators other than the above also appear for more information.

Manual Update
[S! Information Channel Menu] ✧ ***Weather Indicator*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ✧ ***Manual Update*** ➡ ◉ ➡ ✧ ***Yes*** ➡ ◉

Advanced

● Saving Files to Data Folder ● Changing Display Size ● Changing Scroll Unit ● Copying Text ● Requesting Re-Delivery ● Checking Weather Forecast (**P.8-38**)

● Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby ● Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates (**P.12-13**)

Reading e-Books (Japanese)

Downloading e-Books

1. Y! ➡ *メニューリスト* ➡ ●
2. *書籍･ｺﾐｯｸ･写真集* ➡ ●
   - Follow onscreen instructions.
   - Downloaded e-Books are saved to Data Folder (Books).

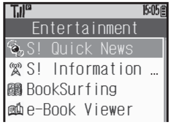
Note

- Alternatively, visit SH-web to download e-Books.

e-Book Viewer

Read XMDF books and dictionary files. Some files may not be supported.

1. ● ➡ *Entertainment* ➡ ●



Entertainment Menu

2. *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ●
   - e-Book Viewer starts. Refer to the e-Book Viewer help menu for operational instructions.

BookSurfing®

Download Contents Keys and read CCF files. Some files may not be supported.

1. **In Entertainment menu,** ***BookSurfing*** ➡ ●
   - BookSurfing® S! Application starts. Refer to the BookSurfing® help menu for operational instructions.

Moving CCF Files via Memory Card

- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF files and retrieve Contents Keys to open the files. Some files may need to be re-downloaded.

Advanced

Copying Text Opening Non-830SH e-Books (Library) (**P.8-38**)

PIM/Lifestyle Tools 1

Start Here [Calendar Window] P.8-3 [Schedule Entry Window] P.8-3 [Task Entry Window] P.8-5 [Schedule List] P.8-4 [Task List] P.8-6

Calendar & Tasks

Calendar

Changing Date Color

By Days of the Week

[Calendar Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Set Color* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *By Week* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select day ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select color ➡ ●

By Date

[Calendar Window] ✣ Select date ➡ 4 ➡ ◎ Select color ➡ ●

Resetting "By Date" Colors

[Calendar Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Calendar Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Set Color* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Reset Color* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select option ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

Saving Schedules/Tasks

Changing Alarm Tone/Video

[Schedule Entry Window]/[Task Entry Window] ◎ *Alarm:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ✣ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ Y!

- Select start point if required.

Hiding Entries

[Schedule Entry Window]/[Task Entry Window] ◎ *Secret:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Saving Schedules

Saving Repetitive Schedules

[Schedule Entry Window] ◎ *Repeat:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select cycle ➡ ● ➡ Enter repeat time ➡ ● ➡ Y!

- Repeat time is not available for ***Every Year***.

Editing Schedules

[Schedule List] ◎ Select schedule ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving schedules ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Saving Tasks

Editing Tasks

[Task List] ◎ Select task ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select item ➡ ● ➡ Edit in the same manner as saving tasks ➡ ● ➡ Y!

PIM/Lifestyle Tools 2

Start Here → [Calendar Window] P.8-3 [Task List] P.8-6 [Alarm Menu] P.8-7 [Alarm List] P.8-7 [Calculator Window] P.8-9

Managing Schedules

Deleting All Schedules

[Calendar Window] → *Delete* → → *All Appointments* → → Enter Handset Code → → *Yes* →

Managing Tasks

Deleting All Tasks

[Task List] → *Delete* → → *All Tasks* → → Enter Handset Code → → *Yes* →

Alarms

Saving Entry Name

[Alarm Menu] *Subject:* → → Enter name → →

Changing Alarm Tone/Video

Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File

[Alarm Menu] *Assign Tone/ Video:* → → Select folder → → Select tone/file → →

- Select start point if required.

Using Customized Screen Tone/Video

[Alarm Menu] *Assign Tone/ Video:* → → *Customized Screen* → →

Setting Handset to Vibrate at Alarm Time

[Alarm Menu] *Vibration:* → → *On* or *Link to Sound* → →

- Select ***Link to Sound*** to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Editing Entries

[Alarm List] Select entry → → Select item → → Edit in the same manner as saving entries → →

Calculator

Copying Calculation Results

While result appears, → *Copy* →

Changing Exchange Rate for Currency Conversion

[Calculator Window] → *Money Converter* → → *Exchange Rate* → → *Domestic* or *Foreign* → → Enter rate →

Converting Currencies

[Calculator Window] Enter amount of money → → *Money Converter* → → *To Domestic* or *To Foreign* →

- Set Exchange Rate first.

PIM/Lifestyle Tools 3

Start Here [Expenses Memo List] P.8-10 [IC Card Settings Menu] P.8-12 [Mail Remote Lock Menu] P.8-12 [Call Remote Lock Menu] P.8-13

Expenses Memo

Changing Category of Saved Entry

[Expenses Memo List] Select entry ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●

Changing Amount

[Expenses Memo List] Select entry ➡ ✉ ➡ *Change Amount* ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●

Osaifu-Keitai®

Enabling to View E-Money Balances

[IC Card Settings Menu] *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ *<Empty>* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Appli* or *Lifestyle-Appli* ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ●

- For use with compatible Lifestyle-Applications.
- Start Lifestyle-Appli once before adding it to Balance Info list.

Moving Applications Up/Down Balance Info List

[IC Card Settings Menu] *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Move* ➡ ● ➡ Select location ➡ ●

Removing Applications from Balance Info List

[IC Card Settings Menu] *Balance Info* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Select application ➡ ✉ ➡ *Delete* ➡ ●

Checking E-Money Balance on External Display

With handset closed, ◀ (Long) ➡ Balance appears ➡ [key] or [key] ➡ Balance disappears

- Use ◀▶ to view balances of listed entries.
- Save Lifestyle-Appli to Balance Info list beforehand.
- Balances do not appear if IC Card Lock is active.

Changing IC Card Lock Notice Recipient

Changing Recipient

[Mail Remote Lock Menu] *Notice Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Notice* ➡ ● ➡ *To Set Recipient* ➡ ● ➡ *Set Recipient* ➡ ● ➡ Select method ➡ ● ➡ Select/ enter number/address ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Disabling Notice

[Mail Remote Lock Menu] *Notice Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Send Notice* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ CLEAR/BACK ➡ Y!

Changing Required Missed Call Count for Call Remote Lock

[Call Remote Lock Menu] *Count for Lock* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Missed Call count ➡ ● ➡ Y!

PIM/Lifestyle Tools 4

Start Here → [Pretense Call Menu] P.8-14

Pretense Call

Clearing Caller Information

[Pretense Call Menu] ◎ ***Set Caller*** ➡ ● ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ Y!

Overriding Silent Volume Setting

[Pretense Call Menu] ◎ ***Set Silent*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Ring*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Timer/Clock Tools

Start Here [Set Time Zone Window] P.8-17 [Hour Minder Menu] P.8-18

World Clock

Adding Custom Time Zone

[Set Time Zone Window] ✉ ➡ Enter city name ➡ ● ➡ ◎ + or - ➡ ◎ ➡ Enter time difference ➡ ●

Hour Minder

Changing Hour Minder Tone/Video

■ Using Preset Tone or Data Folder File

[Hour Minder Menu] ◎ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select tone/file ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ Y!

- Select start point if required.

■ Using Customized Screen Tone/Video

[Hour Minder Menu] ◎ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Assign Tone/Video:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Customized Screen* ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ Y!

Setting Handset to Vibrate at Hour Minder Time

[Hour Minder Menu] ◎ *Advanced* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Vibration:* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* or *Link to Sound* ➡ ● ➡ Y! ➡ Y!

- Select ***Link to Sound*** to allow compatible SMAF files to control vibration.

Doc./Rec. Tools 1

Start Here → [Notepad List] P.8-20 [Recording Window] P.8-21

Notepad

Editing Notepad

Editing Text

[Notepad List] Select entry ➡ ➡ *Edit Text* ➡ ● ➡ Edit text ➡ ●

Changing Category

[Notepad List] Select entry ➡ ➡ *Change Category* ➡ ● ➡ Select Category ➡ ●

Searching Text within All Entries

[Notepad List] Select entry ➡ ➡ *Search* ➡ ● ➡ Enter text ➡ ●

Inserting Notepad Text into Message Text

[Notepad List] Select entry ➡ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *As Message Text* ➡ ● ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Sending Notepad Entries via S! Mail

[Notepad List] Select entry ➡ ➡ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ *Via Message* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

Inserting Notepad Text during Text Entry

In a text entry window, ➡ *Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Notepad* ➡ ● ➡ Select entry ➡ ●

Voice Recorder

Saving Longer Recordings

[Recording Window] ➡ *Record Time* ➡ ● ➡ *Extended Voice* ➡ ●

Sending Voice Files via S! Mail

[Recording Window] ● ➡ Recording starts ➡ ● ➡ Recording stops ➡ *Save and Send* ➡ ● ➡ Complete message ➡ Y!

- Available in ***For Message*** mode.

Switching Storage Media

[Recording Window] ➡ *Save Recording to* ➡ ● ➡ Select option ➡ ●

- Available in ***For Message*** mode.
- Set to ***Ask Each Time*** to select media after every recording.

Doc./Rec. Tools 2

Start Here → [Barcode/Scan Menu] P.8-22 [Barcode Scan Results Window] P.8-22 [Scanned Text Window] P.8-25

Scan Barcode

Scanning during Text Entry

■ Pasting All Scan Results

In a text entry window, ✉ ➔ ◎ *Scan* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Scan Code* ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ●

■ Pasting a Part of Scan Results

In a text entry window, ✉ ➔ ◎ *Scan* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Scan Code* ➔ ● ➔ Frame barcode in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ Select first character ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Highlight text range ➔ ●

Reading Saved Barcode Images

[Barcode/Scan Menu] ◎ *Open Barcode* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select file ➔ ●

Scan Text

Scanning during Text Entry

In a text entry window, ✉ ➔ ◎ *Scan* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Text Scanner* ➔ ● ➔ Frame text in center of Display ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select line ➔ ● ➔ ●

Scan Results

Using Linked Info

■ Dialing Numbers

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/ [Scanned Text Window] ◎ Select number ➔ ● ➔ [Call key]

■ Sending Messages

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/ [Scanned Text Window] ◎ Select mail address ➔ ● ➔ Complete message ➔ [Y!]

- When ***MAIL TO:*** appears in scan results, press ● to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Composition window.

■ Accessing Internet Sites

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/ [Scanned Text Window] ◎ Select URL ➔ ●

Saving Scan Results

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/ [Scanned Text Window] ✉ ➔ ◎ *Save* ➔ ●

Opening Saved Scan Results

[Barcode/Scan Menu] ◎ *Scanned Results* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select file ➔ ●

- Select a file and press ✉ to rename files, open properties or delete files.
- Some files may not open.

Using Images as Wallpaper

[Barcode Scan Results Window] ◎ Select image ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *Set as Wallpaper* ➔ ● ➔ ●

- If Wallpaper Display options appear, follow onscreen prompts.

Doc./Rec. Tools 3

Start Here → [Barcode Scan Results Window] P.8-22 [Scanned Text Window] P.8-25 [Card Scan Results Window] P.8-24

Saving Linked Info to Phone Book

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] Select number or mail address ➡ ➡ *Save to Ph.Book* ➡ ➡ *As New Entry* ➡ ➡ Complete other fields ➡

- To add to an existing entry, select ***As New Detail***.
- When ***MEMORY:*** appears in scan results, press to enter the items underlined with a dotted line automatically in Phone Book entry window.

Saving Images & Melodies

[Barcode Scan Results Window] Select file ➡ ➡ *To Data Folder* ➡

Opening or Playing Files

[Barcode Scan Results Window] Select file ➡

Using Images for System Graphics

[Barcode Scan Results Window] Select image ➡ ➡ *As System* ➡ ➡ Select item ➡ ➡ ➡ Specify display area ➡

- Some images may be usable without specifying display area.

Saving to Notepad

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Card Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] ➡ *Notepad* ➡

Pasting to Message Text

All Text

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Card Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] ➡ *Send Message* ➡ ➡ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ➡ Complete message ➡

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Selected Text

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Card Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] ➡ *Send Message* ➡ ➡ ➡ Select first character ➡ ➡ Highlight text range ➡ ➡ *S! Mail* or *SMS* ➡ ➡ Complete message ➡

- S! Mail Composition window opens automatically depending on character count.

Copying Text

Text

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Card Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] ➡ *Copy* ➡ ➡ Select first character ➡ ➡ Highlight text range ➡

Number, Address or URL

[Barcode Scan Results Window]/[Scanned Text Window] Select number, mail address or URL ➡ ➡ *Copy Telephone*, *Copy Address* or *Copy URL* ➡

Entertainment 1

Start Here ➔[S! Quick News Menu] P.8-26 [S! Quick News List] P.8-26

S! Quick News

Receiving S! Loop Item Updates

Registering with S! Loop Items

[S! Quick News Menu] ◎ *S! Loop List* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *S!ループにアクセス* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Yes* ➔ ●

- Handset connects to the Internet. Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Opening Information

[S! Quick News Menu] ◎ *S! Loop List* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select item ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select title ➔ ●

- Indicators:

▢	Unread S! Loop
▢	Read S! Loop
☒	Auto update disabled

Updating List Automatically

S! Quick News List

[S! Quick News Menu] ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Automatic Update* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *S! Quick News* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select item ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select interval or choose *On* ➔ ●

- When a confirmation appears, press ●.
- When Special is set to ***On***, items are updated every four hours.
- When General is set to ***On***, items are updated once a day.
- To cancel automatic update, choose ***Off*** and press ●.
- Updating items may incur high charges.
- Only available in Japan.

S! Loop List

[S! Quick News Menu] ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Automatic Update* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *S! Loop* ➔ ● ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *On* ➔ ● ➔ ●

- Items are updated about four times a day.
- Only available in Japan.

Checking Update Schedule

[S! Quick News Menu] ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Check Schedule* ➔ ●

Changing Background Image

[S! Quick News Menu] ◎ *Settings* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Change Skin* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ Select pattern ➔ ●

Deleting S! Quick News Items

One Entry

[S! Quick News List] ◎ Select item ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *一件* ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Yes* ➔ ●

All Entries

[S! Quick News List] ◎ Select item ➔ ✉ ➔ ◎ *全件* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ ◎ *Yes* ➔ ●

Entertainment 2

Start Here [S! Information Channel Page] P.8-27 [S! Information Channel Menu] P.8-27 [Entertainment Menu] P.8-28

S! Information Channel

Saving Files to Data Folder

[S! Information Channel Page] ⊠ ➡ ⦾ *Save Items* ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ Select file ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ *Save* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter name ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ *Save here* ➡ ◉

- Some files are saved automatically.

Changing Display Size

[S! Information Channel Page] ⊠ ➡ ⦾ *Settings* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ *Display Size* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ Select size ➡ ◉

Changing Scroll Unit

[S! Information Channel Page] ⊠ ➡ ⦾ *Settings* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ Select unit ➡ ◉

Copying Text

[S! Information Channel Page] ⊠ ➡ ⦾ *Copy Text* ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ Select first character ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ Highlight text range ➡ ◉

Requesting Re-Delivery

[S! Information Channel Menu] ⦾ *Get Latest Contents* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ *Yes* ➡ ◉

Checking Weather Forecast

[S! Information Channel Menu] ⦾ *Weather Indicator* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⦾ *Weather* ➡ ◉

e-Books

Copying Text

In open page, Y! ➡ ⦾ *文字列をｺﾋﾟｰ* ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ Select first character ➡ ◉ ➡ ✣ Highlight text range ➡ ◉

Opening Non-830SH e-Books (Library)

[Entertainment Menu] ⦾ *e-Book Viewer* ➡ ⊠ ➡ ⦾ Select file ➡ ◉

- Some files may not open.

9 Communication Services

Using S! Town & S! Loop (Japanese)

S! Town

Select an avatar to enter this 3D virtual town, where you can play games and meet other users.

- To use S! Town, agree to the terms of service then complete free user registration.
- Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1. ● ➡ ✥ *Communication* ➡ ●
2. ♁ *S! Town* ➡ ●
   - S! Town (S! Application) starts.
   - Refer to the S! Town help menu for operational instructions.
   - When an upgrade notice appears, follow onscreen instructions to upgrade.

S! Town Library

- Downloaded S! Town-compatible S! Applications are saved to S! Town Library. To start an application in S! Town Library, follow these steps:
  ● ➡ ✥ ***Communication*** ➡ ● ➡ ♁ ***S! Town*** ➡ ✉ ➡ ♁ **Select application** ➡ ●

S! Loop

S! Loop is an online communication service. Share your diary, join BBS, etc. Internet connection is required; may incur high charges.

1. ● ➡ ✥ *Communication* ➡ ●
2. ♁ *S! Loop* ➡ ●
   - Refer to the S! Loop help menu for operational instructions.

Using S! Friend's Status

- S! Friend's Status requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Set Connection status to ***Online*** beforehand.

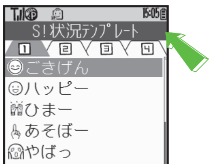
Changing My Status

Follow these steps to change Status, Availability and Comment; new status is sent to the members.

1 ✱ (Long)

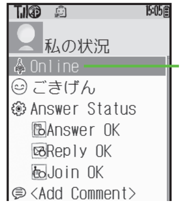
If Connection status is ***Online***, skip ahead to **3**.

2 ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●



Status Template Window

3 ◎ **Select Status** ➡ ●



Connection Status

My Status Window

4 ◎ **Select Availability, e.g.,** ***Answer OK*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select new Availability** ➡ ●

5 ◎ ***<Add Comment>*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter text** ➡ ●

6 Y! ➡ **Update starts**

Changing Connection Status
[My Status Window] ◎ ***Online*** (or ***Offline***) ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select status ➡ ●

Changing Status Icon/Label
[Status Template Window] ◎ Select Status ➡ Y! ➡ ◎ ***Status Icon*** or ***Status Label*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select Pictogram or enter text ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Changing Availability Settings at Once
In **4**, ◎ ***Answer Status*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select new Answer Status ➡ ● ➡ From **5**

Editing My Status Name
[My Status Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ ***Edit Name*** ➡ ● ➡ Edit ➡ ●

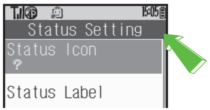
Advanced

Disabling IP Service (**P.12-15**)

Creating Status Templates

Save custom combinations of Status Icon and Status Label to each template.

1. In Status Template window, ✉ ➡ *New Entry* ➡ ◉
2. Enter name ➡ ◉
3. *<未定>* ➡ ◉



4. *Status Icon* ➡ ◉ ➡ Select Pictogram ➡ ◉
5. *Status Label* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter text ➡ ◉ ➡ Y!
6. Repeat 3 - 5 ➡ Y! ➡ Saved

Saving to Data Folder
[Status Template Window] Select template ➡ ✉ ➡ *Save to DF* ➡ ◉ ➡ *Save here* ➡ ◉

Loading Templates from Data Folder
[Status Template Window] ✉ ➡ *Add Template* ➡ ◉ ➡ Select template ➡ ◉

Renaming Templates
[Status Template Window] Select template ➡ ✉ ➡ *Edit Temp. Name* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter name ➡ ◉

Resetting Templates

One Template

1. In Status Template window, (select template) ➡ ✉
2. *Reset* ➡ ◉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ◉

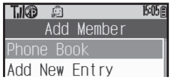
All Templates

1. In Status Template window, ✉
2. *Reset All* ➡ ◉ ➡ *Yes* ➡ ◉
   - Status Template window returns to the default setting.

Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book for the first time. To add members, see **P.9-6**.

1 ● ➡ ✥ ***Communication*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***S! Friend's Status*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●



2 ◎ ***Phone Book*** ➡ ● ➡ ✥ **Select entry** ➡ ●

3 ◎ **Select phone number** ➡ ●

- Omit 3 if only one number is saved.

4 ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

- Registration request is sent to the number. Registration is complete when an acceptance notice arrives.

When Registration is Complete

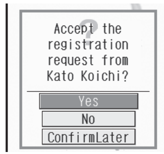
- My Status is sent and member's status appears on handset.

Direct Entry

In 2, ◎ *Add New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ Enter phone number ➡ ● ➡ 4

Registering from Received Request

When a registration request arrives, a confirmation appears.



1 ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

- Acceptance notice is sent; the number is registered.

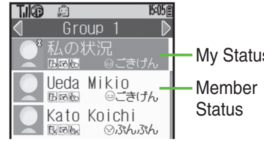
Rejecting

In 1, ◎ *No* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

- Rejection notice is sent; the number cannot be registered for 24 hours.
- For ***ConfirmLater***, Information window opens.

Opening Member Status

1 ● ➡ ✥ ***Communication*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***S! Friend's Status*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select Group**



S! Friend's Status Member List

2 ◎ **Select member** ➡ ●



Member Status Details Window

When Cancellation Notice Arrives

- Member is deleted from S! Friend's Status member list.

Advanced

Adding Members, Deleting Members, Moving Members, Renaming Groups, Updating Manually, Opening Notices (**P.9-6**)

Rejecting requests from unsaved numbers, Rejecting all requests, Rejecting incoming images (**P.12-14**)

Adding Members

[S! Friend's Status Member List] ✉ ➡ ⓝ *Add Member* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ Select method ➡ ◉ ➡ Select entry or enter phone number ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ *Yes* ➡ ◉

Deleting Members

[S! Friend's Status Member List] ⓝ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ ⓝ *Registration Release* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ *Yes* ➡ ◉

- Cancellation notice is sent; deleted members cannot be re-registered for 24 hours.

Moving Members

[S! Friend's Status Member List] ⓝ Select member ➡ ✉ ➡ ⓝ *Change Group* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ Select target Group ➡ ◉

Renaming Groups

[S! Friend's Status Member List] ✉ ➡ ⓝ *Edit Group Name* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter name ➡ ◉

Updating Manually

[S! Friend's Status Member List] ✉ ➡ ⓝ *Settings* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ *Status Update* ➡ ◉

Opening Notices

[S! Friend's Status Member List] ✉ ➡ ⓝ *Status Notif. List* ➡ ◉ ➡ ⓝ Select notice ➡ ◉

- Accept or reject registration requests.

Using S! Circle Talk

- A subscription to S! Friend's Status is required.
- Transmission fees apply during S! Circle Talk.

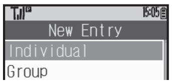
Registering Members

Follow these steps to register a number saved in Phone Book:

1

- When registering a member for the first time, a confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** and press, then skip ahead to 3.

2 ***<Add New Entry>*** →



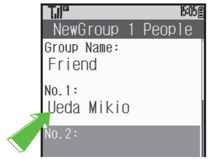
3 ***Group*** → → ***Group Name:*** → → **Enter name** →



4 **Select number, e.g.,** ***No.1:*** →

5 ***Phone Book*** → → **Select entry** →

6 **Select phone number** →



- Omit 6 if only one number is saved.
- Repeat 4 - 6 to add members.

7 → **Saved**

Saving as Individuals

In 3, ***Individual*** → → 5 - 6

Saving from S! Friend's Status Member List

In 5, ***Members List*** → → **Select member** → → 7

- Omit 7 when ***Individual*** is selected in 3.

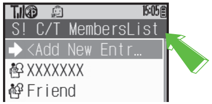
Advanced

Editing Member List (**P.9-9**)
Disabling IP Service (**P.12-15**)

Initiating S! Circle Talk

Follow these steps to send S! Circle Talk requests to members:
Set My Status to ***Online*** first (**P.9-3**).

1



S! Circle Talk Member List

2 **Select member or Group ➡**

3 **➡ Transmission starts**

- S! Circle Talk starts when request is accepted by a receiver.

Direct Entry
Enter phone number ➡ ➡ ➡ Transmission starts

S! Circle Talk Operations

Speaking

1 **Press and hold when *Press and Hold* appears ➡ You have the floor**



- ***:Own*** appears when you have the floor.

2 **Keep holding to speak ➡ Release ➡ Floor is released**

- Warning tone sounds before time limit.

Canceling Loudspeaker
During S! Circle Talk,
- To reactivate, follow these steps: **➡ While message appears,**

Exiting S! Circle Talk

1 **➡ Connection ends**

- S! Circle Talk ends automatically when there is only one participant left, including yourself.

Rejoining S! Circle Talk
/ ➡ Select most recent S! Circle Talk record ➡ ➡ *Rejoin Circle Talk* ➡
- An error message appears when S! Circle Talk has ended or maximum number of participants are already engaged.

Accepting S! Circle Talk Request

1 **While handset is ringing/vibrating, ➡ S! Circle Talk starts**

- Alternatively, press .
- S! Circle Talk Operations: left

Advanced

Disabling Loudspeaker (**P.12-14**)

Editing Member List

Replacing Individual Members

[S! Circle Talk Member List] ⓢ Select member ➡ ⓜ ➡ ⓢ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select method ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select entry ➡ ●

Editing Groups

[S! Circle Talk Member List] ⓢ Select Group ➡ ⓜ ➡ ⓢ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select target ➡ ● ➡ Edit/enter ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Deleting Members or Groups

[S! Circle Talk Member List] ⓢ Select member or Group ➡ ⓜ ➡ ⓢ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ *Yes* ➡ ●

Deleting Group Members

[S! Circle Talk Member List] ⓢ Select Group ➡ ⓜ ➡ ⓢ *Edit* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ Select member ➡ ⓜ ➡ ⓢ *Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ⓢ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

10

Handset Security

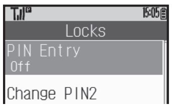
Operations Security

Function Lock

Restrict access to handset functions.

Auto	Lock when Display turns off or handset is closed
Once	One time lock
At Power On	Lock when handset is turned on

1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** ◎ ***Locks*** ➡ ●



Locks Menu

2 ◎ ***Function Lock*** ➡ ●

3 ◎ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Unlocking Handset

In Standby, enter Handset Code ➡ ●

When Function Lock is Active

- Press corresponding key to turn handset on/off, answer calls, place callers on hold, end calls, etc.

PIN Entry

Activate PIN Entry to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

1 **In Locks menu,** ◎ ***PIN Entry*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Switch On/Off*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***On*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter PIN** ➡ ●

Secure Remote Lock

Lock a lost handset remotely via PC or another handset. Secure Remote Lock disables all operations except turning handset on, and activates IC Card Lock (**P.8-12**).

For more about Secure Remote Lock, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (**P.13-21**) or contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.13-38**).

Accessing My SoftBank

Access My SoftBank as needed.

1 Y! ➡ ✣ ***メニューリスト*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***My SoftBank*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***English*** ➡ ●

Advanced

●Changing PIN ●Changing PIN2 ●Setting Secure Remote Lock Activation Message to Appear (**P.10-4**)

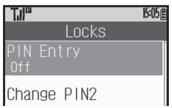
Information Security

Application Lock

Restrict access to these functions:

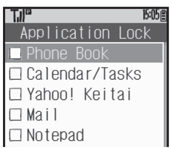
Phone Book	Calendar/Tasks
Yahoo! Keitai	Mail
Notepad	

1 ● ➡ ◇ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** ◇ ***Locks*** ➡ ●



Locks Menu

2 ◇ ***Application Lock*** ➡ ●



3 ◇ **Select item** ➡ ● **(☑ appears)** ➡ Y! ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

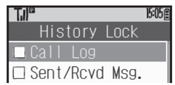
Temporary Access to Functions

- When accessing functions, enter Handset Code and press ●.

History Lock

Restrict access to Call Log and sent/received mail records.

1 **In Locks menu,** ◇ ***History Lock*** ➡ ●



2 ◇ **Select item** ➡ ● **(☑ appears)** ➡ Y! ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

Temporary Access to Records

- When accessing records, enter Handset Code and press ●.

Show Secret Data

Activate Show Secret Data to access Secret entries.

1 **In Locks menu,** ◇ ***Show Secret Data*** ➡ ●

2 ◇ ***On*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

When Show Secret Data is Active

- Predictive is not available for text entry.

Additional Functions

Start Here ➔ [Locks Menu] P.10-2

PIN & PIN2

Changing PIN

[Locks Menu] ◎ *PIN Entry* ➔ ◉ ➔ ◎ *Change PIN* ➔ ◉ ➔ Enter current PIN ➔ ◉ ➔ Enter new PIN ➔ ◉ ➔ Re-enter new PIN ➔ ◉

- Activate PIN Entry first.

Changing PIN2

[Locks Menu] ◎ *Change PIN2* ➔ ◉ ➔ Enter current PIN2 ➔ ◉ ➔ Enter new PIN2 ➔ ◉ ➔ Re-enter new PIN2 ➔ ◉

Secure Remote Lock

Setting Secure Remote Lock Activation Message to Appear

■ Saving Message

[Locks Menu] ◎ *Set Lock Message* ➔ ◉ ➔ ◎ *Message* ➔ ◉ ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ◉ ➔ Enter message ➔ ◉ ➔ ◎ *Yes* ➔ ◉

■ Checking Message

[Locks Menu] ◎ *Set Lock Message* ➔ ◉ ➔ ◎ *Check Message* ➔ ◉

11

Connectivity & File Backup

Infrared

Wirelessly transfer the following files between 830SH and compatible devices.

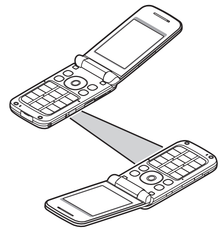
Phone Book	Received Msg.
Calendar	Sent Messages
Tasks	Drafts
Notepad	Templates
Bookmarks	Data Folder

- Copy/forward protected files are not transferable.
- Some files may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not be saved properly.

Getting Started

Infrared Precautions

Align Infrared Ports of both devices.



- Do not place objects between devices.
- Keep Infrared Ports aligned during transfer.

Transfer Options

One File Transfer	Transfer single files
All File Transfer	Transfer all files by function

- Some transfer options may be unavailable depending on file type.
- Transfer Memory Card files one by one.

Authorization Code

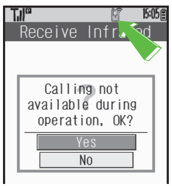
- Four-digit code required for infrared transfers. All File Transfers possible when codes match. (Authorization Code is changeable for each transfer.)

Transferring Files via Infrared

Receiving Files

1 ⊙ **(Long)**
- Infrared is activated.
- Handset receives files if sent within three minutes.
- Handset must be in Standby to accept connection requests.
- To cancel infrared, Long Press ⊙.

2 Connection request arrives



Request Window

3 Perform subsequent operations
- To cancel transfer, press Y!.

Subsequent Operations

One File Transfer

○ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ○ *Yes* ➡ ●
- When confirmation for save location appears, select a location and press ●.

All File Transfer (Adding Files)

○ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡ ● ➡ ○ *As New Items* ➡ ●

Sending Files

One File Transfer

Example: Phone Book entry

1 ○ ➡ ○ **Select entry** ➡ ✉ ➡ ○ ***Send Entry*** ➡ ●



2 ○ ***Via Infrared*** ➡ ●

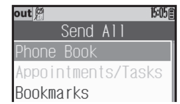
3 ○ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ **Transfer starts**
- When finished, entry list returns.

All File Transfer

1 ● ➡ ○ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ○ ***Connectivity*** ➡ ○ ***Infrared*** ➡ ●

2 ○ ***Send All*** ➡ ●

3 ○ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●



4 ○ **Select item** ➡ ●

5 Enter Authorization Code ➡ ● ➡ **Transfer starts**
- When finished, Send All menu returns.

Sending Phone Book
- In 5, follow these steps to select whether to send Phone Book Pictures: ○ ***Yes*** or ***No*** ➡ ●

Advanced

Overwriting Existing Files ● Sending My Details ● Sending Non-Phone Book Files (**P.11-4**)

Overwriting Existing Files

[Request Window] ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ Enter Authorization Code ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Delete All & Save* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ●

- For Phone Book, My Details except handset phone number is overwritten as well.

Sending My Details

● ➡ 0 ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Send My Card* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Via Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

Sending Non-Phone Book Files

In file list, ◎ (select file) ➡ ✉ ➡ ◎ *Send* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Via Infrared* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ Transfer starts

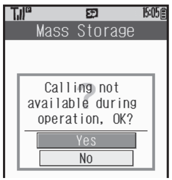
Connecting to PC

Accessing Memory Card from PC

Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable to access Memory Card from the PC without removing the card from handset.

- USB Cable may be purchased separately.
- If handset is connected to a PC via USB Cable, disconnect it first.

1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ✣ ***Connectivity*** ➡ ✣ ***Mass Storage*** ➡ ●



2 ✣ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

3 **Connect handset to a PC via USB Cable**

- Use PC to access Memory Card.

4 Y! ➡ ✣ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ **Connection ends**

- Safely remove handset (recognized as removable hardware device) on the PC, then disconnect USB Cable.

Utility Software (Japanese)

Supplied CD-ROM contains these utility software programs:

Modem Wizard	Use handset as a modem
Memory Card Transfer Software	Transfer files on Memory Cards formatted for other SoftBank handsets by SHARP to Memory Cards for 830SH
SoftBank Utility Software*	Transfer files between handset and PC

*Access download page from Utility Software CD-ROM.

- USB Cable driver is also contained.
- For details, see **Utility Software Starter Guide** (Japanese) on Utility Software CD-ROM.

Mobile Data Communication Fees

- Using the Internet by connecting handset to PC/PDA may incur high charges as large-volume packet transmissions tend to occur in a short period of time; check transmission fees while online.

Backup & Restore

Back up information to Memory Card, and restore to handset as needed.
The following folders/entries can be transferred at once:

Phone Book*	Drafts*
Calendar*	Templates
Tasks*	Contents Keys
Bookmarks*	Data Folder
Notepad*	S! Town
Received Msg.*	Mail Groups
Sent Messages*	User Dictionary

*Selectable simultaneously via ***Check Selection*** in Options menu.

Precautions

- Not available if battery is low.
- Some items may not be transferable; some settings may be lost, or files may not transfer properly.

Transferring All Items

Use blank Memory Card for ***Backup All Items***. Do not use the card to save other files after ***Backup All Items***; backed up content may not be restored properly.

Transferring Selected Items

Received Msg.

- Transfer deletes Auto Sort Keys.
- Mail Notices are restored as messages, invalidating complete message retrieval.
- If spam filter is available on recipient handset, Spam Folder messages are saved in spam folder regardless of the setting. (If unavailable, they are saved as normal received messages.)

Sent Messages

Transfer deletes Auto Sort Keys.

Drafts

If transferred from Drafts, only the first entered recipient remains or SMS addressed to multiple recipients may not be saved.

Bookmarks

- Yahoo! Keitai, Streaming and PC Site Browser Bookmarks are all backed up.
- Streaming Bookmarks are saved as Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks.

Contents Keys

Moving Keys to Memory Card creates a special file. Performing Backup again on the same Memory Card overwrites that file. Perform Restore beforehand.

Handset to Memory Card

Follow these steps to back up selected items at once:

1 ● ➡ ✣ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ ✣ ***Connectivity*** ➡ ✣ ***Backup*** ➡ ●



Backup Menu

2 ✣ ***Backup Selected Items*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

3 ✣ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

4 ✣ **Select item** ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ **Complete selection**

- For ***Phone Book***, confirmation appears. Choose ***Yes*** or ***No*** and press ●.

5 Y! ➡ ✣ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

- To cancel, press Y!.

6 **Backup complete** ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
In 4, ✉ ➡ ✣ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From 5

Selecting/Canceling All Items
In 4, ✉ ➡ ✣ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Memory Card to Handset

Follow these steps to restore selected items:

Restoring backed up content to handset overwrites current handset content (with the exception of Contents Keys).

1 **In Backup menu,** ✣ ***Restore Selected Items*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

2 ✣ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

3 ✣ **Select item** ➡ ● (☐/☑) ➡ **Complete selection**

4 Y!

- If no file list appears, skip ahead to 7.

5 ✣ **Select file** ➡ ●

- Repeat 5 to complete selection.

6 ●

7 ✣ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

- To cancel, press Y!.

8 **Restore complete** ➡ ● ➡ ●

Selecting Multiple Items at Once
In 3, ✉ ➡ ✣ Select option ➡ ● ➡ From 4

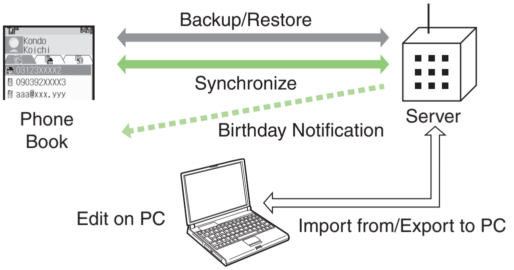
Selecting/Canceling All Items
In 3, ✉ ➡ ✣ *Check All* or *Uncheck All* ➡ ●

Advanced

● Backing Up All Items ● Encoding Data for Backup ● Restoring All Items ● Deleting Backup Files (**P.11-11**)

About SAB

Back up Phone Book content in SAB; add Phone Book changes to SAB anytime. Edit SAB online via PC; add SAB changes to Phone Book anytime. Restore lost or altered Phone Book content from SAB.



- SAB requires a separate contract and basic monthly fee.
- Use SAB to add Phone Book content to a new compatible SoftBank handset; some conditions apply (**P.11-9**).
- Use a PC to edit SAB online.
- For more about SAB, see the corresponding Website (**P.13-21**).
- Sync commands (Backup, Restore and Synchronize) all incur transmission fees.

SAB Sync Commands & Features

Backup/ Restore	**Backup**	Export Phone Book content to SAB[1]
	Restore	Import SAB content to Phone Book[2]
Synchronize	**Synchronize**	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB[3]
	Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB[4]
	Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book[5]
Edit on PC	**Import from PC**	Upload PC address book info to SAB
	Export to PC	Export SAB content to PC address book
Send Notice[6]	**Birthday Notification**	SAB sends reminders via SMS to handset
	Email Address Notification[7]	Send new handset mail address to specified addresses
	"Disaster Message Board" Message Notification[8]	Send emergency message board update to specified addresses
Spam Filter	**Tomodachi Email Filter**[9]	Always accept messages from mail addresses saved in SAB

[1] Any existing SAB content is deleted.
[2] Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.
[3] If the same entry item is edited in Phone Book and SAB, SAB content is referenced.
[4] Unrelated SAB changes remain.
[5] Unrelated Phone Book changes remain.
[6] Access this function via handset or a PC.
[7] Backup resets notification setting; handset address is sent to all addresses.
[8] Backup resets notification setting; updates are not sent to any address.
[9] Export Phone Book content to SAB beforehand.

Service Usage Outline

Complete Contract

Visit a SoftBank Shop, dial 157 from a SoftBank handset for SoftBank Customer Center, General Information or access My SoftBank (Japanese) via Yahoo! Keitai.

↓

Receive User ID & Password

After subscription, User ID and Password arrive via SMS.

- User ID and Password are required to use SAB via a PC.

↓

Use SAB

Export Phone Book content to SAB.

Precautions

Unsynchronizable Items

SAB restoration cancels these Phone Book settings:

- Picture, Tone/Video, Vibration

Unintentional Phone Book or SAB Content Deletion

- When no Phone Book content exists, selecting ***Synchronize***, ***Sync from Client*** or ***Backup*** deletes all SAB content.
- When no SAB content exists, selecting ***Synchronize***, ***Sync from Server*** or ***Restore*** deletes all Phone Book content.

Phone Book ⇔ SAB Content Capacity Disparities

When the number of savable items varies between Phone Book and SAB entries, Synchronization reflects lower limit.

Contract Termination

SAB content is deleted upon contract termination.

SAB Transfers to New Handsets

- **SAB-Compatible 3G Handsets**
  SAB remains as last saved and is fully accessible.
- **Other 3G Handsets**
  SAB remains as last saved and is accessible via PC.
- **V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series**
  Service contract is terminated and SAB content is deleted.

Advanced

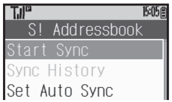
Confirming User ID & Password (**P.11-11**)

Backup & Restore

Backup (Phone Book → SAB)

Any existing SAB content is deleted.

1 ● ➡ ◎ ***Phone*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***S! Addressbook Backup*** ➡ ●



S! Addressbook Menu

2 ◎ ***Start Sync*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Backup*** ➡ ●

3 ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

- Backup starts; when completed, details appear.

4 ● ➡ **Backup complete**

Canceling Backup
Y! ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Restore (SAB → Phone Book)

Any existing Phone Book content is deleted.

1 **In S! Addressbook menu,** ◎ ***Start Sync*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ ***Restore*** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

- Restore starts; when completed, details appear.

3 ● ➡ **Restore complete**

Canceling Restore
Y! ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Synchronizing Phone Book

Synchronize Options:

Synchronize	Synchronize Phone Book and SAB
Sync from Client	Add Phone Book changes to SAB
Sync from Server	Add SAB changes to Phone Book

If this is your first use of SAB (new handset), Synchronization is performed via Synchronize regardless of selection.

1 **In S! Addressbook menu,** ◎ ***Start Sync*** ➡ ● ➡ ◎ **Select option** ➡ ●

2 ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ● ➡ **Enter Handset Code** ➡ ●

- Synchronization starts; when completed, details appear.

3 ● ➡ **Synchronization complete**

Canceling Synchronization
Y! ➡ ◎ ***Yes*** ➡ ●

Advanced

Auto Synchronization ● Opening Log (**P.11-11**)

Backup

Start Here ➜ [Backup Menu] P.11-7 [S! Addressbook Menu] P.11-10

Backup & Restore

Backing Up All Items

[Backup Menu] ◎ *Backup All Items* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ Backup complete ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉

Encoding Data for Backup

[Backup Menu] ◎ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Encode Settings* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ Select item ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ◉

- Available for Phone Book, Messaging folders, Calendar and Tasks.

Restoring All Items

[Backup Menu] ◎ *Restore All Items* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉ ➡ Restore complete ➡ ◉ ➡ ◉

Deleting Backup Files

[Backup Menu] ◎ *Settings/Manage* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *File Management* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ Select item ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ Select file ➡ ◉ (☐/☑) ➡ Complete selection ➡ Y! ➡ ◎ *Yes* ➡ ◉

S! Addressbook Back-up

Confirming User ID & Password

Y! ➡ ◎ *メニューリスト* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *My SoftBank* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *English* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Password confirmation for S! Address Book* ➡ ◉ ➡ Follow onscreen instructions

Auto Synchronization

Activating

[S! Addressbook Menu] ◎ *Set Auto Sync* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Set On/Off* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ◉

Changing Auto Sync Frequency

[S! Addressbook Menu] ◎ *Set Auto Sync* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Set On/Off* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Set Frequency* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ Select frequency ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter/select date/time/day of the week ➡ ◉

- For ***After Editing Ph.Book(10 min.)***, omit steps for date, time, etc.

Changing Auto Sync Command

[S! Addressbook Menu] ◎ *Set Auto Sync* ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Set On/Off* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ *Set Sync Mode* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ Select command ➡ ◉

Opening Log

[S! Addressbook Menu] ◎ *Sync History* ➡ ◉ ➡ ◎ Select record ➡ ◉

12
Handset Customization

Phone Settings

Mode

Start Here → ● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Mode Settings* ➡ ●

Selecting a handset mode	**Select mode** ➡ ●
Customizing handset modes	**Select mode** ➡ ✉ ➡ **Select item** ➡ ● ➡ **Adjust settings** ● Not available for Normal mode.

Date & Time

Start Here → ● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Date & Time* ➡ ●

Setting the date and time	*Set Date/Time* ➡ ● ➡ **Enter the year** ➡ **Enter the month** ➡ **Enter the day** ➡ **Enter the time** ➡ ●
Correcting Clock manually	*Time Correction* ➡ ● ➡ *Manual* ➡ ● ➡ *Yes* ➡ ●
Activating Daylight Saving	*Daylight Saving* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Changing Time Zone	*Set Time Zone* ➡ ● ➡ **Select area** ➡ ●
Changing time format to 12 hour	*Time Format* ➡ ● ➡ *12 Hour* ➡ ●
Changing date format	*Date Format* ➡ ● ➡ **Select option** ➡ ●
Starting the Calendar week on Monday	*Calendar Format* ➡ ● ➡ *Monday-Sunday* ➡ ●

Display & Key Settings 1

Language

Start Here → ● → ✣ *Settings* → ● → Phone Settings menu

Switching interface between Japanese and English	⇕ *Language* or *言語選択* → ● → ⇕ *English* or *日本語* → ●

Display Image

Start Here → ● → ✣ *Settings* → ● → In Phone Settings menu, ⇕ *Display* → ●

Showing preloaded images for incoming calls, etc.	⇕ *System Graphics* → ● → ⇕ Select item → ● → ⇕ *Preset Animation* (or *Pattern 1* to *Pattern 3*) → ●
Showing Data Folder images for incoming calls, etc.	⇕ *System Graphics* → ● → ⇕ Select item → ● → ⇕ Select folder → ● → ✣ Select image → ● → ● → ✣ Specify display area → ● ● Some images may be usable without specifying display area.
Showing Customized Screen for incoming calls, etc.	⇕ *System Graphics* → ● → ⇕ Select item → ● → ⇕ *Customized Screen* → ● → ● ● Not available for *Power On* or *Power Off*.

Display Illumination

Start Here → ● → ✣ *Settings* → ● → In Phone Settings menu, ⇕ *Display* → ●

Changing display transition effects	⇕ *Display Effects* → ● → ⇕ Select option → ●
Changing Display/Keypad Backlight illumination time	⇕ *Backlight* → ● → ⇕ *Time Out* → ● → ⇕ Select time → ●
Changing Display Brightness	⇕ *Backlight* → ● → ⇕ *Brightness* → ● → ⇕ Adjust level → ●
Changing inactivity time after which Display turns off	⇕ *Display Saving* → ● → ⇕ Select period → ●

Display & Key Settings 2

External Display

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, Display ➡ ●

Changing inactivity time after which External Display turns off	*External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Duration* ➡ ● ➡ Select time ➡ ●
Hiding new received messages	*External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Messages* ➡ ● ➡ *Not Display* ➡ ●
Hiding caller's number/name	*External Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Caller Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Additional Display Settings

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, *Display* ➡ ●

Changing Clock/Calendar	*Standby Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Clock/Calendar* ➡ ● ➡ Select type ➡ ●
Hiding indicators in Standby	*Standby Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Indicators* ➡ ● ➡ *Status Area* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●
Showing Softkeys in Standby	*Standby Display* ➡ ● ➡ *Show Indicators* ➡ ● ➡ *Softkey Area* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●

Handset Keys

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Phone Settings menu

Disabling Keypad light illumination	*Set Key Light* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Ringtone & Sound Settings

Handset Response

Start Here → ● → Settings → ● → In Phone Settings menu, Sounds & Alerts → ●

Changing ringtone volume	***Volume*** → ● → **Select item** → ● → **Adjust level** → ●
Answering calls with other keys	***Any Key Answer*** → ● → ***On*** → ● ● Use 0 - 9, *, #, navigation key, or in addition to the Send key.
Changing Event Light illumination option	***Event Light*** → ● → **Select item** → ***On***, ***Link to Sound*** or ***Off*** → ●
Enabling/disabling illumination for missed incoming transmissions	***Status Light*** → ● → **Select item** → ● → ***On*** or ***Off*** → ●

System Sound

Start Here → ● → Settings → ● → In Phone Settings menu, Sounds & Alerts → ●

Enabling Keypad Tones	***System Sounds*** → ● → ***Keypad Tones*** → ● → **Select tone** → ●
Changing S! Circle Talk tone	***System Sounds*** → ● → ***S! Circle Talk*** → ● → **Select tone** → ●
Changing other System Sounds	***System Sounds*** → ● → **Select item** → ● → ***Tone*** → ● → **Select folder** → ● → **Select tone/file** → ● ● For files with limited usage period, choose ***Yes*** and press ●.

Additional Sound Setting

Start Here → ● → Settings → ● → Phone Settings menu

Disabling Speaker when using Headphones	***Ringer Output*** → ● → ***Earphone*** → ●

Handset Customization

12

Text Entry & Phone Book Settings

Text Entry

Start Here [Text Entry Window] ✉ ➡ ◎ *Input/Conversion* ➡ ●

Disabling suggestions based on entered characters	◎ *Predictive* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling suggestions based on entered words	◎ *Previous Usage* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling emoticon/Pictogram suggestions based on entered words	◎ *EmoticonWordLink* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●
Lowering type priorities in suggestion list	◎ *Set Low Priority* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select type ➡ ● (☑ appears) ➡ Y!
Using Keypad to enter words/phrases from suggestion list	◎ *Select Candidate* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Enable 1-9, 0, *, #* ➡ ●

Phone Book

Start Here ● ➡ ◎ *Phone* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Ph.Book Settings* ➡ ●

Switching reference Phone Book	◎ *Select Phone Book* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *USIM Memory* or *Both* ➡ ●
Changing default storage media for new entries	◎ *Save New Entry* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *USIM Memory* or *Ask Each Time* ➡ ●
Hiding confirmation after calls to/from unsaved numbers	◎ *New Number Prompt* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Incoming Call* or *Outgoing Call* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●

Advanced Call Settings

Voice Call & Video Call

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ Settings ➡ ● ➡ *Call/Video Call*

Setting handset to beep once each minute during Voice Calls	*Minute Minder* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Showing Call Cost after each call	*Disp. Time/Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *Display Call Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *On* ➡ ●
Hiding Call Time during calls	*Disp. Time/Cost* ➡ ● ➡ *Call Time Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Video Call

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Video Call* ➡ ●

Changing Alternative Image	*Camera Picture* ➡ ● ➡ *Alternative Image* ➡ ● ➡ Select folder ➡ ● ➡ Select image ➡ ● ➡ ●
Changing quality of Incoming/Outgoing Images	*Incoming Picture* or *Outgoing Picture* ➡ ● ➡ Select quality ➡ ●
Disabling Loudspeaker for Video Calls	*Loudspeaker* ➡ ● ➡ *Off* ➡ ●

Packet Transmission

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ *Call/Video Call* ➡ *Call Time & Cost* ➡ ●

Checking the most recent packet transmission volume	*Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *Last Data* ➡ ●
Checking all packet transmission volume	*Data Counter* ➡ ● ➡ *All Data* ➡ ●

Advanced Messaging Settings 1

General Settings

Start Here → ✉ ➡ ◎ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *General Settings* ➡ ●

Changing message window scroll unit	◎ *Scroll Unit* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select unit ➡ ●
Changing message list view	◎ *Message List View* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select option ➡ ●
Showing complete sent/received message addresses	◎ *Address View* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Show All* ➡ ●
Changing view for Received Msg. folder	◎ *Received Msg. View* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select option ➡ ●
Changing view for Sent Messages folder	◎ *Sent Msg. View* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ Select option ➡ ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest received messages	◎ *Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Received Msg.* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●
Canceling automatic deletion of oldest sent messages	◎ *Auto Delete* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Sent Messages* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●

- For Received Msg. View and Sent Msg. View, ***Folder View by Account*** is selectable when a PC Mail Account exists.

Sending/Composing

Start Here → ✉ ➡ ◎ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Send/Compose* ➡ ●

Requesting Delivery Report for all messages	◎ *Delivery Report* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *On* ➡ ●
Disabling automatic resend of unsent messages	◎ *Auto Resend* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●

Receiving

Start Here → ✉ ➡ ◎ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *General Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Receive* ➡ ●

Muting ringer, etc. for messages sorted into Secret folders	◎ *Message Notice* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Secret Folder* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *No Response* ➡ ●
Hiding incoming Feeling Mail subject, sender, etc.	◎ *Link to Feeling* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Idle Screen Info.* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Off* ➡ ●
Disabling 3D Pictogram	◎ *3D Pictogram* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Display Effect* ➡ ● ➡ ◎ *Disable* ➡ ●

Advanced Messaging Settings 2

S! Mail

Start Here ➔ ✉ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ S! Mail Settings ➔ ●

Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval in Japan	***Message DL(Japan)*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Manual*** ➔ ●
Disabling automatic S! Mail retrieval abroad	***Message DL(Abroad)*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Manual*** ➔ ● ● When set to ***Auto (All)***, complete S! Mail messages including attachments are retrieved; may incur high charges.
Enabling image auto-resize	***Picture Appearance*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Double-Sized*** ➔ ●
Disabling image auto-open	***Auto Play File*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Pictures*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Off*** ➔ ●
Enabling sound auto-play	***Auto Play File*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Sounds*** ➔ ● ➔ ***On*** ➔ ●

● Settings in Picture Appearance and Auto Play File apply to PC Mail as well.

PC Mail

Start Here ➔ ✉ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ PC Mail Settings ➔ ●

Retrieving complete PC Mail messages	***PC Mail DL*** ➔ ● ➔ ***PC Mail DL*** ➔ ● ➔ ***All Contents*** ➔ ●
Retrieving new messages automatically	***Check New Mail*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Check New Mail*** ➔ ● ➔ ***On*** ➔ ● ➔ **Select account** ➔ ● (☑ appears) ➔ Y! ➔ ●
Changing interval between automatic message retrieval	***Check New Mail*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Interval*** ➔ ● ➔ **Select interval** ➔ ●
Disabling automatic word wrap	***Word wrap*** ➔ ● ➔ ***Off*** ➔ ●

● Setting Check New Mail to ***On*** may incur high charges; checking for new messages may incur transmission fees even when none exists. Remember this, especially when using handset outside Japan.

● Other functions may slow while handset is checking for new messages.

SMS

Start Here ➔ ✉ ➔ Settings ➔ ● ➔ SMS Settings ➔ ●

Changing Server sent message storage limit	***Expiry Time*** ➔ ● ➔ **Select option** ➔ ●

Advanced Internet Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here → ● → ✣ *Yahoo! Keitai* → ● → ◎ *Browser Settings* → ●

Changing character size	◎ *Font Size* → ● → ◎ Select size → ●
Changing scroll unit	◎ *Scroll Unit* → ● → ◎ Select unit → ●
Activating pointer navigation	◎ *Cursor Settings* → ● → ◎ *Cursor Mode Settings* → ● → ◎ *Normal Mode* → ●
Changing pointer speed	◎ *Cursor Settings* → ● → ◎ *Speed Settings* → ● → ◎ Select speed → ●
Disabling automatic image display	◎ *Downloads* → ● → ◎ *Images* → ● → ◎ *Do not Show* → ●
Disabling automatic sound playback	◎ *Downloads* → ● → ◎ *Sounds* → ● → ◎ *Do not Play* → ●
Clearing cache (temporarily saved information)	◎ *Memory Operation* → ● → ◎ *Delete Cache* → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●
Clearing cookies	◎ *Memory Operation* → ● → ◎ *Delete Cookies* → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●
Clearing authentication information	◎ *Memory Operation* → ● → ◎ *Delete Auth Info* → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●
Using Memory Card as primary download storage	◎ *Download to* → ● → ◎ *Prefer Card* → ● ● Some files may be saved to handset regardless of this setting.
Resetting browser settings and stored information (Bookmarks, Saved Pages, etc.)	◎ *Initialized Browser* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●
Restoring default handset settings	◎ *Reset Settings* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●

PC Site Browser

Start Here → ● → ✣ *Yahoo! Keitai* → ● → ◎ *PC Site Browser* → ● → ◎ *PC Site Browser Settings* → ●

Hiding navigation map for continuous scroll	◎ *Scroll Settings* → ● → ◎ *Page Navigation* → ● → ◎ *Off* → ●
Changing scroll unit (PC Site Browser)	◎ *Scroll Settings* → ● → ◎ *Scroll Unit* → ● → ◎ Select unit → ●
Hiding PC Site Browser activation/change confirmation	◎ *Warning Message* → ● → ◎ *PC Site Browser* or *Yahoo! Keitai* → ● → ◎ *Off* → ●
Deleting all RSS feeds	◎ *Memory Operation* → ● → ◎ *Delete RSS Feed List* → ● → Enter Handset Code → ● → ◎ *Yes* → ●

● Yahoo! Keitai settings above are also available in PC Site Browser Settings.

Advanced Camera Settings

Photo/Video Camera

Start Here ● ➡ ◈ *Camera* ➡ ● (For Video Camera, then press Y!)

Changing save location	✉ ➡ ◈ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ *Save Pictures to* or *Save Videos to* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ Select location or *Ask Each Time* ➡ ● ● *Ask Each Time* is available for video recording when Record Time/Size is set to *For Message*.
Activating automatic saving	✉ ➡ ◈ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ *Auto Save* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ *On* ➡ ●
Selecting image quality	✉ ➡ ◈ *Picture Quality* or *Video Quality* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ Select quality ➡ ●

Photo Camera

Start Here ● ➡ ◈ *Camera* ➡ ●

Changing shutter click sound	✉ ➡ ◈ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ *Shutter Sound* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ Select pattern ➡ ● ● Shutter click sounds for Continuous Shoot, Panorama Picture and Scanner are unique and fixed.

Video Camera

Start Here ● ➡ ◈ *Camera* ➡ ● ➡ Y!

Recording video without sound	✉ ➡ ◈ *Microphone* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ *Off* ➡ ●
Enlarging Viewfinder size	✉ ➡ ◈ *Display Size* ➡ ● ➡ ◈ *Enlarge* ➡ ●

Advanced Media Player & S! Application Settings

Video Playback

Start Here ➔ ● ➔ Media Player ➔ ● ➔ Videos ➔ ● ➔ Settings ➔ ●

Setting Backlight status	*Backlight* ➔ ● ➔ Select option ➔ ● ● Selecting ***Normal Settings*** applies Display Backlight setting.
Hiding linked information	*Web Link Setting* ➔ ● ➔ *Off* ➔ ●

Operational Settings (S! Appli)

Start Here ➔ ● ➔ *S! Appli* ➔ ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ●

Adjusting S! Application sound volume	*Application Volume* ➔ ● ➔ Adjust level ➔ ●
Showing incoming transmission notice	*Calls & Alarms* ➔ ● ➔ Select item ➔ ● ➔ *Show Call Notice* ➔ ●
Pausing S! Application for incoming mail	*Calls & Alarms* ➔ ● ➔ *Incoming Message* ➔ ● ➔ *Message Priority* ➔ ●
Setting handset to show notice at Alarm Time	*Calls & Alarms* ➔ ● ➔ *Alarm* ➔ ● ➔ *Alarm Notice* ➔ ●
Showing incoming S! Appli Request notice	*Calls & Alarms* ➔ ● ➔ *Start Demand* ➔ ● ➔ *Start Notice* ➔ ●
Changing Screensaver Activation Time	*Screensaver* ➔ ● ➔ *Activation Time* ➔ ● ➔ Enter time ➔ ●

● When an S! Application started from Screensaver is active, a message appears for incoming transmissions regardless of settings.

Reset Settings (S! Appli)

Start Here ➔ ● ➔ *S! Appli* ➔ ● ➔ *Settings* ➔ ●

Restoring default S! Application settings	*Set to Default* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ●
Restoring default S! Appli Library	*Memory All Clear* ➔ ● ➔ Enter Handset Code ➔ ● ➔ *Yes* ➔ ● ● Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.)

● Memory All Clear deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications.

Advanced Handy Extras Settings

Alarm

Start Here → Tools → → In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, *Alarms* →

Sounding Alarm Time tone even in Manner mode	*Settings* → → *For Manner Mode* → → *Ring* → → *Yes* →
Activating Alarm based on World Clock time	*Settings* → → *Link to World Clk* → → *On* →

Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here → *Tools* → → In PIM/LifestyleTools menu, *Osaifu-Keitai* →

Restoring default Osaifu-Keitai® settings	*IC Card Settings* → → *Set to Default* → → Enter Handset Code → → *Yes* → ● Settings in IC Card Lock, Remote Lock, Interface Settings and Balance Info return to their defaults. (Downloaded Lifestyle-Applications remain.)

Hour Minder

Start Here → *Tools* → → *Timer/Clock Tools* → *Hour Minder* →

Sounding Hour Minder Time tone even in Manner mode	*Advanced* → → *For Manner Mode:* → → *Ring* → → *Yes* → → →
Activating Hour Minder based on World Clock time	*Advanced* → → *Link to World Clk:* → → *On* → → →

S! Information Channel

Start Here → *Entertainment* → → *S! Information Channel/Weather* →

Hiding Weather Indicator in Standby	*Weather Indicator* → → *Settings* → → *Standby Setting* → → *Off* →
Canceling Weather Indicator automatic updates	*Weather Indicator* → → *Settings* → → *Icon Update* → → *Off* →

Advanced Communication Service Settings

S! Friend's Status

Start Here → ● → *Communication* → ● → *S! Friend's Status* → ●

Rejecting requests from unsaved numbers	✉ → *Settings* → ● → *Request Reply* → ● → *Confirm if Registered* → ● ● Rejection notice is sent to rejected numbers automatically.
Rejecting all requests	✉ → *Settings* → ● → *Request Reply* → ● → *Always Ignore* → ● ● Rejection notice is sent to all requesters automatically.
Rejecting incoming images	✉ → *Settings* → ● → *Receiving Image* → ● → *Reject* → ●

S! Circle Talk

Start Here → → ✉

Disabling Loudspeaker	*Loudspeaker* → ● → *Off* → ●

Advanced Connectivity Settings

PC Connection

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ ✥ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Connectivity* ➡ ⇕ *USB Charge* ➡ ●

Disabling USB Charge	⇕ *Disable* ➡ ●

Network

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ ✥ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ ⊙ *Network Settings*

Retrieving Network Information	⇕ *Retrieve NW Info* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Yes* ➡ ●
Hiding Location Information	⇕ *Location Info* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Datum On/Off* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●
Changing Location Information confirmation option	⇕ *Location Info* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Location Property* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ Select option ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

IP Service

Start Here ➡ ● ➡ ✥ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, ⇕ *Locks* ➡ ●

Disabling IP Service	⇕ *IP Service Setting* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Off* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ●

- When ***Off***, S! Friend's Status, S! Circle Talk and S! Appli Communication are disabled.

Reset Settings

Restoring Default Settings

Start Here → ● ➡ ✥ *Settings* ➡ ● ➡ In Phone Settings menu, ⇕ *Master Reset* ➡ ●

Restoring default handset settings	⇕ *Reset Settings* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Some default settings may not be restored.
Clearing all Phone Book entries, Data Folder files, etc.	⇕ *Reset All* ➡ ● ➡ Enter Handset Code ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Yes* ➡ ● ➡ ⇕ *Yes* ➡ ● ● Delete IC Card data beforehand. (Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli; contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.) ● Files and records deleted by Reset All cannot be restored. Reset All deletes all downloaded S! Applications and Lifestyle-Applications. ● Handset Code returns to the default setting.

● A confirmation may appear before entering Handset Code; end the current function to proceed.

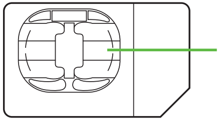
13

Appendix

About USIM Card

USIM Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including the handset number. USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset. Save Phone Book entries on USIM Card Phone Book to use them on other SoftBank handsets. Depending on the USIM Card in use, some entry items may not be supported, and some limits (character entry, etc.) may be lower.

Precautions



- Do not insert USIM Card into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM Card IC chip clean; malfunction may result. Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM Card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card. Malfunction may result.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.13-38**).

USIM PINs

There are two Security Codes for USIM Card; both are ***9999*** by default.

PIN	Security Code to prevent unauthorized use of handset
PIN2	Required to clear Call Costs and to set Max Cost, etc.

PIN Lock

- Entering incorrect PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock, limiting handset use.

Canceling PIN Lock

- Contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.13-38**) for your Personal Unblocking Key (PUK Code) and follow these steps:

  Enter PUK Code ➡ ◉ ➡ Enter new PIN/PIN2 ➡ ◉ ➡ Re-enter new PIN/PIN2 ➡ ◉

  ■ Write down PUK code.

USIM Lock

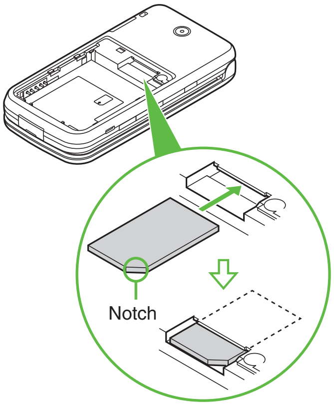
- Entering incorrect PUK Code ten consecutive times locks USIM Card, disabling handset. To learn how to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.13-38**).

USIM Card Installation

- Do not apply excessive force to insert/remove USIM Card.
- USIM Card must be inserted to use this handset.

Inserting

1. **Remove battery (P.13-4)**
2. **Slide in USIM Card with IC chip facing down**

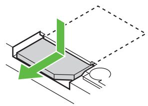


- Reinstall battery (**P.13-4**).

Removing

Take care not to lose removed USIM Card.

1. **Remove battery (P.13-4)**
2. **Gently slide out USIM Card as shown**



- Reinstall battery (**P.13-4**).

After Repairs, USIM Card Replacement or Handset Upgrade/Replacement

- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible. In addition, S! Applications, BookSurfing® and S! Town may be disabled after USIM Card replacement.

Battery Installation

About Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months; an uncharged battery may become unusable or affect files/settings.
- Depending on usage, bulges may appear near end of battery life; this does not affect safety.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Clean device charging terminals with a dry cotton swab.

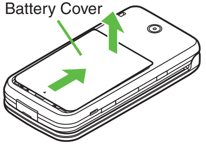
Lithium-ion Battery

- This product requires a lithium-ion battery. Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource.
  - To recycle a used lithium-ion battery, take it to any shop displaying the symbol shown above.
  - To avoid fire or electric shock, do not short-circuit or disassemble battery.



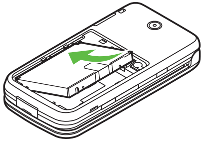
Inserting & Removing

1 Remove cover



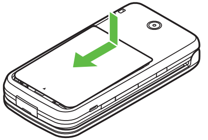
- Press and slide as shown.

2 Insert battery



- With logo side up, fit tabs into battery cavity slots.

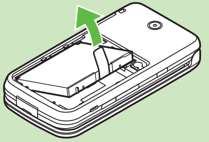
3 Close cover



- Position and slide the cover gently as shown until it stops.

Removing

- Turn handset power off, then take hold of Battery Tab (printed "PULL") and lift as shown.



- If Battery Tab rips off and battery cannot be removed, contact a SoftBank Shop.

Software Update

Check for firmware updates and download as required.

Precautions

- Handset is disabled until update is complete. Update may take up to approximately 30 minutes.
- Update failure may disable handset. To reduce failure risk, make sure signal is strong and stable, and charge battery beforehand.
- Update will not start if other functions are in use. Before updating software (or before scheduled update time), end all active functions/applications.
- Disconnect USB Cable beforehand to reduce failure risk.
- Always back up important information. SoftBank cannot be held liable for damages from lost information, etc.

Updating Software

Packet transmission fees do not apply to updates (including checking, downloading and rewriting).

1 ● ➡ ✥ ***Settings*** ➡ ● ➡ **In Phone Settings menu,** ◇ ***Software Update*** ➡ ●

2 ◇ ***Software Update*** ➡ ●



- Follow onscreen instructions.

Setting Update Period (Japanese)

In 2, ◇ *Update Period* ➡ ●

■ Follow onscreen instructions.

Update Result

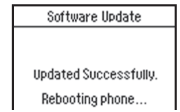
In 2, ◇ *Update Result* ➡ ●

Scheduled Update

Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press ● or wait a while for update to start.

When Updated

A message appears and handset reboots.



After reboot, completion message appears and Information window opens.

Update Result

While Information window appears, ◇ *Update Result* ➡ ●

Reboot Failure

- If handset does not return to Standby after update, turn power off, reinsert battery, then restart it. If it still does not restart, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.13-38**).

Troubleshooting

General

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Handset won't turn on	Was [power key] pressed long enough?	Press [power key] longer.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.13-4**).
Handset won't respond	Is ***Switch On/Off*** in PIN Entry ***On***?	If ***On***, PIN is required. Enter PIN according to onscreen prompt.
***Insert USIM Card* appears**	USIM Card may not be properly inserted.	Turn power off and check that USIM Card is properly inserted, then restart handset. If the message still appears, USIM may be damaged.
	The correct USIM Card may not be inserted.	Make sure the correct USIM Card is inserted. The inserted USIM Card may not be valid.
	There may be debris on IC chip/terminals.	Clean relevant parts with a dry cloth and re-insert.
***REFRESH* appears and handset returns to Standby**	Handset may have been dropped or subjected to shocks.	Handset failed to recognize USIM Card temporarily. This is not a malfunction.
Keypad won't respond	Keypad Lock may be active ([icon] appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (**P.1-13**).
	Function Lock may be active ([icon] appears).	Cancel Function Lock (**P.10-2**).
Battery strength indicator flashes when not charging	Ambient temperature may be outside 5°C to 35°C.	Use within an ambient temperature of 5°C - 35°C.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Saved entry/folder does not appear on handset	Entry/folder may be set to Secret.	Activate Show Secret Data (**P.10-3**).
Cannot use Predictive	Show Secret Data may be active.	Cancel Show Secret Data.
Handset/AC Charger/Desktop Holder feels warm	Handset/accessories may warm while charging.	Unless handset/accessories are too hot to touch, warmth is considered normal. Always avoid prolonged skin contact to prevent burn injuries.
	Handset may warm during extended periods of use.	
	Handset may warm during Video Calls.	
Cannot access Memory Card files	Memory Card may not be properly formatted.	Use 830SH-formatted Memory Cards.
Cannot receive/ accept connection requests even when Infrared is *On*	Handset may not be in Standby.	Return to Standby and retry.
	Keypad Lock/Function Lock may be active.	Cancel Keypad Lock/Function Lock.
	Software Update may be in progress.	Wait until update is complete.

Charger/Battery

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery charges quickly	Remaining charge shortens charging time.	This is normal.
	Battery may be terminally exhausted or defective. (Small Light flashes red.)	Replace battery with a new one.
Battery charges slowly	Charging slows during Video Calls.	End the call to charge faster.
	Battery may be charging via USB.	Use AC Charger.
Battery won't charge	AC Charger or Desktop Holder may not be properly connected to handset.	Make sure connector is securely inserted and retry.
	AC Charger may not be firmly plugged in to AC outlet.	Remove plug from outlet, re-insert and retry.
	Battery may not be properly installed.	Install battery properly (**P.13-4**).
	Battery, AC Charger, or handset/Desktop Holder charging terminals, or Device/Desktop Holder Connection Port may be obstructed by dust, etc.	Clean terminals, connector and Port with a dry cotton swab and retry.
	Charger/holder, etc. may not be supported.	Use specified AC Charger, Desktop Holder, etc. only; others may damage battery.

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Battery Time seems shorter than usual	High power consuming operations are in use.	Keep handset closed in Standby; reduce S! Application, Media Player and Camera use, and limit transmissions/external connections.
	Using handset in poor conditions may shorten Battery Time.	Avoid prolonged use of handset out-of-range or in poor signal conditions.
	Power hungry settings may be active.	Lower Brightness, select shorter Display Saving/Backlight time, etc.

Calling

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Cannot place call	Keypad Lock may be active (appears).	Cancel Keypad Lock (**P.1-13**).
	Function Lock may be active (appears).	Cancel Function Lock (**P.10-2**).
	Offline Mode may be active (appears).	Cancel Offline Mode (**P.1-15**).
Call won't connect and there's a beeping tone	Did you include the area code or the first ***0***?	Dial the number including the area code or ***0***.
	Handset may be out-of-range (out appears).	Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.

Appendix 13

Calling (continued)

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Call is choppy or cut off	Network signal may be weak.	Move to a place where signal is strong and retry.
	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Clicking noise is heard during call	Handset may be moving into another service area.	Noise is heard when Network signal switches. This is normal.
Cannot hear other party's voice	Earpiece Volume may be low.	Increase Earpiece Volume (**P.3-10**).
Cannot use Answer Phone or Caller Voice	Memory may be full.	Answer Phone and Caller Voice are disabled when less than 12 seconds remain or 20 messages are recorded. Delete messages (**P.3-3**).
	Is the call a Video Call?	Answer Phone and Caller Voice are not available for Video Calls.
Cannot save phone number for Call Forwarding	Does the number start with ***1***, ***00***, ***0120*** or ***0990***?	Public service numbers, international call numbers starting with 00, toll-free numbers and fee-based service numbers cannot be saved.

Messaging

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Cannot receive messages	Does ✉ appear?	Memory is full. Delete messages (**P.4-22**).
	Does [out] appear?	Move to a place where signal is strong.
S! Mail is not delivered as sent	Recipient handset may not be S! Mail-compatible.	Recipient must be subscribed to S! Mail, Super Mail or Long Mail. The maximum size of messages/ attachments handsets can receive varies by make and model. Confirm compatibility with recipient handsets.
Still images are not delivered as sent	Recipient handset may not be JPEG-compatible.	Convert JPEG files to PNG (**P.6-13**).
Video clips are not delivered as sent	Recipient handset may not support the file format.	Send video clips to S! Mail- or VGS-compatible SoftBank handsets supporting MPEG-4.

Other Functions

Problem	Possible Cause	Solution
Mobile camera won't activate	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.
Cannot use Osaifu-Keitai® (S! FeliCa)	Battery may need to be charged or replaced.	Charge battery or install a charged battery.

Key Assignments

<table>
<tr><th>Key</th><th>Kanji (Hiragana)
[Double-byte]</th><th>Katakana
[Double & Single-byte]</th><th>Alphanumerics
[Double & Single-byte]</th><th>Numbers
[Single-byte]</th><th>Character Codes</th></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>あいうえお
ぁぃぅぇぉ</td><td>アイウエオ
ァィゥェォ</td><td>@./-1
□(space)</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>かきくけこ</td><td>カキクケコ</td><td>ABCabc2</td><td>2</td><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>さしすせそ</td><td>サシスセソ</td><td>DEFdef3</td><td>3</td><td>3</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>たちつてとっ</td><td>タチツテトッ</td><td>GHIghi4</td><td>4</td><td>4</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td>なにぬねの</td><td>ナニヌネノ</td><td>JKLjkl5</td><td>5</td><td>5</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>はひふへほ</td><td>ハヒフヘホ</td><td>MNOmno6</td><td>6</td><td>6</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>まみむめも</td><td>マミムメモ</td><td>PQRSpqrs7</td><td>7</td><td>7</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>やゆよゃゅょ</td><td>ヤユヨャュョ</td><td>TUVtuv8</td><td>8</td><td>8</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>らりるれろ</td><td>ラリルレロ</td><td>WXYZwxyz9</td><td>9</td><td>9</td></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>わをんー</td><td>ワヲンー</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">*</td><td>゛ ゜</td><td>゛ ゜ -[1]</td><td>—</td><td>* + P (pause) ? -[2]</td><td rowspan="2">—</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Log, Pictogram List (double-byte), Symbol List[3]</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">#</td><td colspan="2">、。</td><td>,.</td><td rowspan="2">#</td><td rowspan="2">—</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">↲ (line break) ？ ！ □(space)</td></tr>
</table>

[1] - is available only in single-byte katakana entry.
[2] Available for phone number entry; some characters may not be enterable in some windows.
[3] May not be enterable in some windows.

Key Assignments

<table>
<tr><th>Key</th><th>Kanji (Hiragana) [Double-byte]</th><th>Katakana [Double & Single-byte]</th><th>Alphanumerics [Double & Single-byte]</th><th>Numbers [Single-byte]</th><th>Character Codes</th></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Conversion (up)[4]</td><td colspan="4">Cursor up</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Conversion (down)[5]</td><td colspan="4">Cursor down ↲ (line break)</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Cursor left</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">Cursor right</td></tr>
<tr><td>辞書/文字</td><td colspan="5">Change entry mode</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">A/a</td><td colspan="3">Toggle case (for some characters)</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">—</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">—</td><td>Toggle mode (upper/ lower and lower case)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">CLEAR/BACK</td><td colspan="5">Delete one character</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cancel conversion</td><td colspan="3">—</td><td>Delete code</td></tr>
<tr><td>CLEAR/BACK (Long)</td><td colspan="5">Delete before or after cursor</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2"></td><td colspan="5">Recover[6]</td></tr>
<tr><td>Re-convert[7]</td><td colspan="4">—</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td colspan="5">OK</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Phonetic Conversion</td><td colspan="4">—</td></tr>
<tr><td>Y!</td><td>Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumeric Conversion</td><td colspan="4">—</td></tr>
</table>

[4]Cursor moves up except during conversion.
[5]Cursor moves down except during conversion.
[6]Recover deleted characters. (Not available after using CLEAR/BACK (Long).)
[7]Press [key] immediately after inserting characters to re-convert them.

Pager Code List

Gray background indicates upper and lower case available. Press [A/a] to switch immediately after character entry.

Double-byte Upper Case

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next): 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ
2	か	き	く	け	こ	Ｆ	Ｇ	Ｈ	Ｉ	Ｊ
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	Ｐ	Ｑ	Ｒ	Ｓ	Ｔ
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Ｚ	？	！	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	￥	＆		☎	*1
8	や	（	ゆ	）	よ	＊	＃	Space	♥	*2
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	１	２	３	４	５
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	６	７	８	９	０

Single-byte Upper Case

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next): 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｱ	ｲ	ｳ	ｴ	ｵ	A	B	C	D	E
2	ｶ	ｷ	ｸ	ｹ	ｺ	F	G	H	I	J
3	ｻ	ｼ	ｽ	ｾ	ｿ	K	L	M	N	O
4	ﾀ	ﾁ	ﾂ	ﾃ	ﾄ	P	Q	R	S	T
5	ﾅ	ﾆ	ﾇ	ﾈ	ﾉ	U	V	W	X	Y
6	ﾊ	ﾋ	ﾌ	ﾍ	ﾎ	Z	?	!	-	/
7	ﾏ	ﾐ	ﾑ	ﾒ	ﾓ	¥	&		☎	*1
8	ﾔ	(	ﾕ	)	ﾖ	*	#	Space	♥	*2
9	ﾗ	ﾘ	ﾙ	ﾚ	ﾛ	1	2	3	4	5
0	ﾜ	ｦ	ﾝ	ﾞ	ﾟ	6	7	8	9	0

Double-byte Lower Case

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next): 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ぁ	ぃ	ぅ	ぇ	ぉ	ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ	ｅ
2						ｆ	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ
3						ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ	ｏ
4			っ			ｐ	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ
5						ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ	ｙ
6						ｚ				
7										*1
8	ゃ		ゅ		ょ					*2
9										
0				、	。					

Single-byte Lower Case

First Digit (Press First)	Second Digit (Press Next): 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	ｧ	ｨ	ｩ	ｪ	ｫ	a	b	c	d	e
2						f	g	h	i	j
3						k	l	m	n	o
4			ｯ			p	q	r	s	t
5						u	v	w	x	y
6						z				
7										*1
8	ｬ		ｭ		ｮ					*2
9										
0				､	｡					

*1 Press [7][0] to insert ↵ (line break) in mail message text, Notepad, etc.
*2 Press [8][0] to toggle upper and lower case modes.

Character Code List

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
010		(Space)	、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？
011	！	゛	゜	´	｀	¨	＾	￣	＿	ヽ
012	ヾ	ゝ	ゞ	〃	仝	々	〆	〇	ー	―
013	‐	／	＼	～	‖	｜	…	‥	‘	’
014	“	”	（	）	〔	〕	［	］	｛	｝
015	〈	〉	《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】
016	＋	－	±	×	÷	＝	≠	＜	＞	≦
017	≧	∞	∴	♂	♀	°	′	″	℃	￥
018	＄	￠	￡	％	＃	＆	＊	＠	§	☆
019	★	○	●	◎	◇					
020		◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼	※	〒
021	→	←	↑	↓	〓					
022							∈	∋	⊆	⊇
023	⊂	⊃	∪	∩						
024			∧	∨	￢	⇒	⇔	∀	∃	
026	∠	⊥	⌒	∂	∇	≡	≒	≪	≫	√
027	∽	∝	∵	∫	∬					
028			Å	‰	♯	♭	♪	†	‡	¶
029					◯					
031							０	１	２	３
032	４	５	６	７	８	９				
033				Ａ	Ｂ	Ｃ	Ｄ	Ｅ	Ｆ	Ｇ
034	Ｈ	Ｉ	Ｊ	Ｋ	Ｌ	Ｍ	Ｎ	Ｏ	Ｐ	Ｑ
035	Ｒ	Ｓ	Ｔ	Ｕ	Ｖ	Ｗ	Ｘ	Ｙ	Ｚ	
036						ａ	ｂ	ｃ	ｄ	ｅ
037	ｆ	ｇ	ｈ	ｉ	ｊ	ｋ	ｌ	ｍ	ｎ	ｏ
038	ｐ	ｑ	ｒ	ｓ	ｔ	ｕ	ｖ	ｗ	ｘ	ｙ
039	ｚ									
040		ぁ	あ	ぃ	い	ぅ	う	ぇ	え	ぉ
041	お	か	が	き	ぎ	く	ぐ	け	げ	こ
042	ご	さ	ざ	し	じ	す	ず	せ	ぜ	そ
043	ぞ	た	だ	ち	ぢ	っ	つ	づ	て	で
044	と	ど	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	は	ば	ぱ
045	ひ	び	ぴ	ふ	ぶ	ぷ	へ	べ	ぺ	ほ
046	ぼ	ぽ	ま	み	む	め	も	ゃ	や	ゅ

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
047	ゆ	ょ	よ	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	ゎ	わ
048	ゐ	ゑ	を	ん						
050		ァ	ア	ィ	イ	ゥ	ウ	ェ	エ	ォ
051	オ	カ	ガ	キ	ギ	ク	グ	ケ	ゲ	コ
052	ゴ	サ	ザ	シ	ジ	ス	ズ	セ	ゼ	ソ
053	ゾ	タ	ダ	チ	ヂ	ッ	ツ	ヅ	テ	デ
054	ト	ド	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	ハ	バ	パ
055	ヒ	ビ	ピ	フ	ブ	プ	ヘ	ベ	ペ	ホ
056	ボ	ポ	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	ャ	ヤ	ュ
057	ユ	ョ	ヨ	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	ヮ	ワ
058	ヰ	ヱ	ヲ	ン	ヴ	ヵ	ヶ			
060		Α	Β	Γ	Δ	Ε	Ζ	Η	Θ	Ι
061	Κ	Λ	Μ	Ν	Ξ	Ο	Π	Ρ	Σ	Τ
062	Υ	Φ	Χ	Ψ	Ω					
063				α	β	γ	δ	ε	ζ	η
064	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν	ξ	ο	π	ρ
065	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ	ω			
070		А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
071	И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
072	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
073	Ь	Э	Ю	Я						
074										а
075	б	в	г	д	е	ё	ж	з	и	й
076	к	л	м	н	о	п	р	с	т	у
077	ф	х	ц	ч	ш	щ	ъ	ы	ь	э
078	ю	я								
080		─	│	┌	┐	┘	└	├	┬	┤
081	┴	┼	━	┃	┏	┓	┛	┗	┣	┳
082	┫	┻	╋	┠	┯	┨	┷	┿	┝	┰
083	┥	┸	╂							
あ										
160		亜	唖	娃	阿	哀	愛	挨	姶	逢

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
161	葵	茜	穐	悪	握	渥	旭	葦	芦	鯵
162	梓	圧	斡	扱	宛	姐	虻	飴	絢	綾
163	鮎	或	粟	袷	安	庵	按	暗	案	闇
164	鞍	杏								
い										
164			以	伊	位	依	偉	囲	夷	委
165	威	尉	惟	意	慰	易	椅	為	畏	異
166	移	維	緯	胃	萎	衣	謂	違	遺	医
167	井	亥	域	育	郁	磯	一	壱	溢	逸
168	稲	茨	芋	鰯	允	印	咽	員	因	姻
169	引	飲	淫	胤	蔭					
170		院	陰	隠	韻	吋				
う										
170							右	宇	烏	羽
171	迂	雨	卯	鵜	窺	丑	碓	臼	渦	嘘
172	唄	欝	蔚	鰻	姥	厩	浦	瓜	閏	噂
173	云	運	雲							
え										
173				荏	餌	叡	営	嬰	影	映
174	曳	栄	永	泳	洩	瑛	盈	穎	頴	英
175	衛	詠	鋭	液	疫	益	駅	悦	謁	越
176	閲	榎	厭	円	園	堰	奄	宴	延	怨
177	掩	援	沿	演	炎	焔	煙	燕	猿	縁
178	艶	苑	薗	遠	鉛	鴛	塩			
お										
178								於	汚	甥
179	凹	央	奥	往	応					
180		押	旺	横	欧	殴	王	翁	襖	鴬
181	鴎	黄	岡	沖	荻	億	屋	憶	臆	桶
182	牡	乙	俺	卸	恩	温	穏	音		
か										
182									下	化
183	仮	何	伽	価	佳	加	可	嘉	夏	嫁
184	家	寡	科	暇	果	架	歌	河	火	珂
185	禍	禾	稼	箇	花	苛	茄	荷	華	菓
186	蝦	課	嘩	貨	迦	過	霞	蚊	俄	峨
187	我	牙	画	臥	芽	蛾	賀	雅	餓	駕

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
188	介	会	解	回	塊	壊	廻	快	怪	悔
189	恢	懐	戒	拐	改					
190		魁	晦	械	海	灰	界	皆	絵	芥
191	蟹	開	階	貝	凱	劾	外	咳	害	崖
192	慨	概	涯	碍	蓋	街	該	鎧	骸	浬
193	馨	蛙	垣	柿	蛎	鈎	劃	嚇	各	廓
194	拡	撹	格	核	殻	獲	確	穫	覚	角
195	赫	較	郭	閣	隔	革	学	岳	楽	額
196	顎	掛	笠	樫	橿	梶	鰍	潟	割	喝
197	恰	括	活	渇	滑	葛	褐	轄	且	鰹
198	叶	椛	樺	鞄	株	兜	竃	蒲	釜	鎌
199	噛	鴨	栢	茅	萱					
200		粥	刈	苅	瓦	乾	侃	冠	寒	刊
201	勘	勧	巻	喚	堪	姦	完	官	寛	干
202	幹	患	感	慣	憾	換	敢	柑	桓	棺
203	款	歓	汗	漢	澗	潅	環	甘	監	看
204	竿	管	簡	緩	缶	翰	肝	艦	莞	観
205	諌	貫	還	鑑	間	閑	関	陥	韓	館
206	舘	丸	含	岸	巌	玩	癌	眼	岩	翫
207	贋	雁	頑	顔	願					
き										
207						企	伎	危	喜	器
208	基	奇	嬉	寄	岐	希	幾	忌	揮	机
209	旗	既	期	棋	棄					
210		機	帰	毅	気	汽	畿	祈	季	稀
211	紀	徽	規	記	貴	起	軌	輝	飢	騎
212	鬼	亀	偽	儀	妓	宜	戯	技	擬	欺
213	犠	疑	祇	義	蟻	誼	議	掬	菊	鞠
214	吉	吃	喫	桔	橘	詰	砧	杵	黍	却
215	客	脚	虐	逆	丘	久	仇	休	及	吸
216	宮	弓	急	救	朽	求	汲	泣	灸	球
217	究	窮	笈	級	糾	給	旧	牛	去	居
218	巨	拒	拠	挙	渠	虚	許	距	鋸	漁
219	禦	魚	亨	享	京					
220		供	侠	僑	兇	競	共	凶	協	匡
221	卿	叫	喬	境	峡	強	彊	怯	恐	恭
222	挟	教	橋	況	狂	狭	矯	胸	脅	興

Appendix

13

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
223	蕎	郷	鏡	響	饗	驚	仰	凝	尭	暁
224	業	局	曲	極	玉	桐	粁	僅	勤	均
225	巾	錦	斤	欣	欽	琴	禁	禽	筋	緊
226	芹	菌	衿	襟	謹	近	金	吟	銀	
					く					
226										九
227	倶	句	区	狗	玖	矩	苦	躯	駆	駈
228	駒	具	愚	虞	喰	空	偶	寓	遇	隅
229	串	櫛	釧	屑	屈					
230		掘	窟	沓	靴	轡	窪	熊	隈	粂
231	栗	繰	桑	鍬	勲	君	薫	訓	群	軍
232	郡									
					け					
232		卦	袈	祁	係	傾	刑	兄	啓	圭
233	珪	型	契	形	径	恵	慶	慧	憩	掲
234	携	敬	景	桂	渓	畦	稽	系	経	継
235	繋	罫	茎	荊	蛍	計	詣	警	軽	頚
236	鶏	芸	迎	鯨	劇	戟	撃	激	隙	桁
237	傑	欠	決	潔	穴	結	血	訣	月	件
238	倹	倦	健	兼	券	剣	喧	圏	堅	嫌
239	建	憲	懸	拳	捲					
240		検	権	牽	犬	献	研	硯	絹	県
241	肩	見	謙	賢	軒	遣	鍵	険	顕	験
242	鹸	元	原	厳	幻	弦	減	源	玄	現
243	絃	舷	言	諺	限					
					こ					
243						乎	個	古	呼	固
244	姑	孤	己	庫	弧	戸	故	枯	湖	狐
245	糊	袴	股	胡	菰	虎	誇	跨	鈷	雇
246	顧	鼓	五	互	伍	午	呉	吾	娯	後
247	御	悟	梧	檎	瑚	碁	語	誤	護	醐
248	乞	鯉	交	佼	侯	候	倖	光	公	功
249	効	勾	厚	口	向					
250		后	喉	坑	垢	好	孔	孝	宏	工
251	巧	巷	幸	広	庚	康	弘	恒	慌	抗
252	拘	控	攻	昂	晃	更	杭	校	梗	構
253	江	洪	浩	港	溝	甲	皇	硬	稿	糠
254	紅	紘	絞	綱	耕	考	肯	肱	腔	膏
255	航	荒	行	衡	講	貢	購	郊	酵	鉱
256	砿	鋼	閤	降	項	香	高	鴻	剛	劫

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
257	号	合	壕	拷	濠	豪	轟	麹	克	刻
258	告	国	穀	酷	鵠	黒	獄	漉	腰	甑
259	忽	惚	骨	狛	込					
260		此	頃	今	困	坤	墾	婚	恨	懇
261	昏	昆	根	梱	混	痕	紺	艮	魂	
					さ					
261										些
262	佐	叉	唆	嵯	左	差	査	沙	瑳	砂
263	詐	鎖	裟	坐	座	挫	債	催	再	最
264	哉	塞	妻	宰	彩	才	採	栽	歳	済
265	災	采	犀	砕	砦	祭	斎	細	菜	裁
266	載	際	剤	在	材	罪	財	冴	坂	阪
267	堺	榊	肴	咲	崎	埼	碕	鷺	作	削
268	咋	搾	昨	朔	柵	窄	策	索	錯	桜
269	鮭	笹	匙	冊	刷					
270		察	拶	撮	擦	札	殺	薩	雑	皐
271	鯖	捌	錆	鮫	皿	晒	三	傘	参	山
272	惨	撒	散	桟	燦	珊	産	算	纂	蚕
273	讃	賛	酸	餐	斬	暫	残			
					し					
273								仕	仔	伺
274	使	刺	司	史	嗣	四	士	始	姉	姿
275	子	屍	市	師	志	思	指	支	孜	斯
276	施	旨	枝	止	死	氏	獅	祉	私	糸
277	紙	紫	肢	脂	至	視	詞	詩	試	誌
278	諮	資	賜	雌	飼	歯	事	似	侍	児
279	字	寺	慈	持	時					
280		次	滋	治	爾	璽	痔	磁	示	而
281	耳	自	蒔	辞	汐	鹿	式	識	鴫	竺
282	軸	宍	雫	七	叱	執	失	嫉	室	悉
283	湿	漆	疾	質	実	蔀	篠	偲	柴	芝
284	屡	蕊	縞	舎	写	射	捨	赦	斜	煮
285	社	紗	者	謝	車	遮	蛇	邪	借	勺
286	尺	杓	灼	爵	酌	釈	錫	若	寂	弱
287	惹	主	取	守	手	朱	殊	狩	珠	種
288	腫	趣	酒	首	儒	受	呪	寿	授	樹
289	綬	需	囚	収	周					
290		宗	就	州	修	愁	拾	洲	秀	秋
291	終	繍	習	臭	舟	蒐	衆	襲	讐	蹴
292	輯	週	酋	酬	集	醜	什	住	充	十

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
293	従	戎	柔	汁	渋	獣	縦	重	銃	叔
294	夙	宿	淑	祝	縮	粛	塾	熟	出	術
295	述	俊	峻	春	瞬	竣	舜	駿	准	循
296	旬	楯	殉	淳	準	潤	盾	純	巡	遵
297	醇	順	処	初	所	暑	曙	渚	庶	緒
298	署	書	薯	藷	諸	助	叙	女	序	徐
299	恕	鋤	除	傷	償					
300		勝	匠	升	召	哨	商	唱	嘗	奨
301	妾	娼	宵	将	小	少	尚	庄	床	廠
302	彰	承	抄	招	掌	捷	昇	昌	昭	晶
303	松	梢	樟	樵	沼	消	渉	湘	焼	焦
304	照	症	省	硝	礁	祥	称	章	笑	粧
305	紹	肖	菖	蒋	蕉	衝	裳	訟	証	詔
306	詳	象	賞	醤	鉦	鍾	鐘	障	鞘	上
307	丈	丞	乗	冗	剰	城	場	壌	嬢	常
308	情	擾	条	杖	浄	状	畳	穣	蒸	譲
309	醸	錠	嘱	埴	飾					
310		拭	植	殖	燭	織	職	色	触	食
311	蝕	辱	尻	伸	信	侵	唇	娠	寝	審
312	心	慎	振	新	晋	森	榛	浸	深	申
313	疹	真	神	秦	紳	臣	芯	薪	親	診
314	身	辛	進	針	震	人	仁	刃	塵	壬
315	尋	甚	尽	腎	訊	迅	陣	靭		
					す					
315									笥	諏
316	須	酢	図	厨	逗	吹	垂	帥	推	水
317	炊	睡	粋	翠	衰	遂	酔	錐	錘	随
318	瑞	髄	崇	嵩	数	枢	趨	雛	据	杉
319	椙	菅	頗	雀	裾					
320		澄	摺	寸						
					せ					
320					世	瀬	畝	是	凄	制
321	勢	姓	征	性	成	政	整	星	晴	棲
322	栖	正	清	牲	生	盛	精	聖	声	製
323	西	誠	誓	請	逝	醒	青	静	斉	税
324	脆	隻	席	惜	戚	斥	昔	析	石	積
325	籍	績	脊	責	赤	跡	蹟	碩	切	拙
326	接	摂	折	設	窃	節	説	雪	絶	舌
327	蝉	仙	先	千	占	宣	専	尖	川	戦
328	扇	撰	栓	栴	泉	浅	洗	染	潜	煎

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
329	煽	旋	穿	箭	線					
330		繊	羨	腺	舛	船	薦	詮	賎	践
331	選	遷	銭	銑	閃	鮮	前	善	漸	然
332	全	禅	繕	膳	糎					
					そ					
332						噌	塑	岨	措	曾
333	曽	楚	狙	疏	疎	礎	祖	租	粗	素
334	組	蘇	訴	阻	遡	鼠	僧	創	双	叢
335	倉	喪	壮	奏	爽	宋	層	匝	惣	想
336	捜	掃	挿	掻	操	早	曹	巣	槍	槽
337	漕	燥	争	痩	相	窓	糟	総	綜	聡
338	草	荘	葬	蒼	藻	装	走	送	遭	鎗
339	霜	騒	像	増	憎					
340		臓	蔵	贈	造	促	側	則	即	息
341	捉	束	測	足	速	俗	属	賊	族	続
342	卒	袖	其	揃	存	孫	尊	損	村	遜
					た					
343	他	多	太	汰	詑	唾	堕	妥	惰	打
344	柁	舵	楕	陀	駄	騨	体	堆	対	耐
345	岱	帯	待	怠	態	戴	替	泰	滞	胎
346	腿	苔	袋	貸	退	逮	隊	黛	鯛	代
347	台	大	第	醍	題	鷹	滝	瀧	卓	啄
348	宅	托	択	拓	沢	濯	琢	託	鐸	濁
349	諾	茸	凧	蛸	只					
350		叩	但	達	辰	奪	脱	巽	竪	辿
351	棚	谷	狸	鱈	樽	誰	丹	単	嘆	坦
352	担	探	旦	歎	淡	湛	炭	短	端	箪
353	綻	耽	胆	蛋	誕	鍛	団	壇	弾	断
354	暖	檀	段	男	談					
					ち					
354						値	知	地	弛	恥
355	智	池	痴	稚	置	致	蜘	遅	馳	築
356	畜	竹	筑	蓄	逐	秩	窒	茶	嫡	着
357	中	仲	宙	忠	抽	昼	柱	注	虫	衷
358	註	酎	鋳	駐	樗	瀦	猪	苧	著	貯
359	丁	兆	凋	喋	寵					
360		帖	帳	庁	弔	張	彫	徴	懲	挑
361	暢	朝	潮	牒	町	眺	聴	脹	腸	蝶
362	調	諜	超	跳	銚	長	頂	鳥	勅	捗
363	直	朕	沈	珍	賃	鎮	陳			

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
つ										
363								津	墜	椎
364	槌	追	鎚	痛	通	塚	栂	掴	槻	佃
365	漬	柘	辻	蔦	綴	鍔	椿	潰	坪	壷
366	嬬	紬	爪	吊	釣	鶴				
て										
366							亭	低	停	偵
367	剃	貞	呈	堤	定	帝	底	庭	廷	弟
368	悌	抵	挺	提	梯	汀	碇	禎	程	締
369	艇	訂	諦	蹄	逓					
370		邸	鄭	釘	鼎	泥	摘	擢	敵	滴
371	的	笛	適	鏑	溺	哲	徹	撤	轍	迭
372	鉄	典	填	天	展	店	添	纏	甜	貼
373	転	顛	点	伝	殿	澱	田	電		
と										
373									兎	吐
374	堵	塗	妬	屠	徒	斗	杜	渡	登	菟
375	賭	途	都	鍍	砥	砺	努	度	土	奴
376	怒	倒	党	冬	凍	刀	唐	塔	塘	套
377	宕	島	嶋	悼	投	搭	東	桃	梼	棟
378	盗	淘	湯	涛	灯	燈	当	痘	祷	等
379	答	筒	糖	統	到					
380		董	蕩	藤	討	謄	豆	踏	逃	透
381	鐙	陶	頭	騰	闘	働	動	同	堂	導
382	憧	撞	洞	瞳	童	胴	萄	道	銅	峠
383	鴇	匿	得	徳	涜	特	督	禿	篤	毒
384	独	読	栃	橡	凸	突	椴	届	鳶	苫
385	寅	酉	瀞	噸	屯	惇	敦	沌	豚	遁
386	頓	呑	曇	鈍						
な										
386					奈	那	内	乍	凪	薙
387	謎	灘	捺	鍋	楢	馴	縄	畷	南	楠
388	軟	難	汝							
に										
388				二	尼	弐	迩	匂	賑	肉
389	虹	廿	日	乳	入					
390		如	尿	韮	任	妊	忍	認		
ぬ～の										
390									濡	禰
391	祢	寧	葱	猫	熱	年	念	捻	撚	燃

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
392	粘	乃	廼	之	埜	嚢	悩	濃	納	能
393	脳	膿	農	覗	蚤					
は										
393						巴	把	播	覇	杷
394	波	派	琶	破	婆	罵	芭	馬	俳	廃
395	拝	排	敗	杯	盃	牌	背	肺	輩	配
396	倍	培	媒	梅	楳	煤	狽	買	売	賠
397	陪	這	蝿	秤	矧	萩	伯	剥	博	拍
398	柏	泊	白	箔	粕	舶	薄	迫	曝	漠
399	爆	縛	莫	駁	麦					
400		函	箱	硲	箸	肇	筈	櫨	幡	肌
401	畑	畠	八	鉢	溌	発	醗	髪	伐	罰
402	抜	筏	閥	鳩	噺	塙	蛤	隼	伴	判
403	半	反	叛	帆	搬	斑	板	氾	汎	版
404	犯	班	畔	繁	般	藩	販	範	釆	煩
405	頒	飯	挽	晩	番	盤	磐	蕃	蛮	
ひ										
405										匪
406	卑	否	妃	庇	彼	悲	扉	批	披	斐
407	比	泌	疲	皮	碑	秘	緋	罷	肥	被
408	誹	費	避	非	飛	樋	簸	備	尾	微
409	枇	毘	琵	眉	美					
410		鼻	柊	稗	匹	疋	髭	彦	膝	菱
411	肘	弼	必	畢	筆	逼	桧	姫	媛	紐
412	百	謬	俵	彪	標	氷	漂	瓢	票	表
413	評	豹	廟	描	病	秒	苗	錨	鋲	蒜
414	蛭	鰭	品	彬	斌	浜	瀕	貧	賓	頻
415	敏	瓶								
ふ										
415			不	付	埠	夫	婦	富	冨	布
416	府	怖	扶	敷	斧	普	浮	父	符	腐
417	膚	芙	譜	負	賦	赴	阜	附	侮	撫
418	武	舞	葡	蕪	部	封	楓	風	葺	蕗
419	伏	副	復	幅	服					
420		福	腹	複	覆	淵	弗	払	沸	仏
421	物	鮒	分	吻	噴	墳	憤	扮	焚	奮
422	粉	糞	紛	雰	文	聞				
へ										
422							丙	併	兵	塀
423	幣	平	弊	柄	並	蔽	閉	陛	米	頁

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
424	僻	壁	癖	碧	別	瞥	蔑	箆	偏	変
425	片	篇	編	辺	返	遍	便	勉	娩	弁
426	鞭									
ほ										
426		保	舗	鋪	圃	捕	歩	甫	補	輔
427	穂	募	墓	慕	戊	暮	母	簿	菩	倣
428	俸	包	呆	報	奉	宝	峰	峯	崩	庖
429	抱	捧	放	方	朋					
430		法	泡	烹	砲	縫	胞	芳	萌	蓬
431	蜂	褒	訪	豊	邦	鋒	飽	鳳	鵬	乏
432	亡	傍	剖	坊	妨	帽	忘	忙	房	暴
433	望	某	棒	冒	紡	肪	膨	謀	貌	貿
434	鉾	防	吠	頬	北	僕	卜	墨	撲	朴
435	牧	睦	穆	釦	勃	没	殆	堀	幌	奔
436	本	翻	凡	盆						
ま										
436					摩	磨	魔	麻	埋	妹
437	昧	枚	毎	哩	槙	幕	膜	枕	鮪	柾
438	鱒	桝	亦	俣	又	抹	末	沫	迄	侭
439	繭	麿	万	慢	満					
440		漫	蔓							
み										
440				味	未	魅	巳	箕	岬	密
441	蜜	湊	蓑	稔	脈	妙	粍	民	眠	
む										
441										務
442	夢	無	牟	矛	霧	鵡	椋	婿	娘	
め										
442										冥
443	名	命	明	盟	迷	銘	鳴	姪	牝	滅
444	免	棉	綿	緬	面	麺				
も										
444							摸	模	茂	妄
445	孟	毛	猛	盲	網	耗	蒙	儲	木	黙
446	目	杢	勿	餅	尤	戻	籾	貰	問	悶
447	紋	門	匁							
や										
447				也	冶	夜	爺	耶	野	弥
448	矢	厄	役	約	薬	訳	躍	靖	柳	薮
449	鑓									

First Three Digits	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
ゆ										
449		愉	愈	油	癒					
450		諭	輸	唯	佑	優	勇	友	宥	幽
451	悠	憂	揖	有	柚	湧	涌	猶	猷	由
452	祐	裕	誘	遊	邑	郵	雄	融	夕	
よ										
452										予
453	余	与	誉	輿	預	傭	幼	妖	容	庸
454	揚	揺	擁	曜	楊	様	洋	溶	熔	用
455	窯	羊	耀	葉	蓉	要	謡	踊	遥	陽
456	養	慾	抑	欲	沃	浴	翌	翼	淀	
ら										
456										羅
457	螺	裸	来	莱	頼	雷	洛	絡	落	酪
458	乱	卵	嵐	欄	濫	藍	蘭	覧		
り										
458									利	吏
459	履	李	梨	理	璃					
460		痢	裏	裡	里	離	陸	律	率	立
461	葎	掠	略	劉	流	溜	琉	留	硫	粒
462	隆	竜	龍	侶	慮	旅	虜	了	亮	僚
463	両	凌	寮	料	梁	涼	猟	療	瞭	稜
464	糧	良	諒	遼	量	陵	領	力	緑	倫
465	厘	林	淋	燐	琳	臨	輪	隣	鱗	麟
る～れ										
466	瑠	塁	涙	累	類	令	伶	例	冷	励
467	嶺	怜	玲	礼	苓	鈴	隷	零	霊	麗
468	齢	暦	歴	列	劣	烈	裂	廉	恋	憐
469	漣	煉	簾	練	聯					
470		蓮	連	錬						
ろ										
470					呂	魯	櫓	炉	賂	路
471	露	労	婁	廊	弄	朗	楼	榔	浪	漏
472	牢	狼	篭	老	聾	蝋	郎	六	麓	禄
473	肋	録	論							
わ										
473				倭	和	話	歪	賄	脇	惑
474	枠	鷲	亙	亘	鰐	詫	藁	蕨	椀	湾
475	碗	腕								
476										

First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit										First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
477											517	嚀	嚊	嚠	嚔	嚏	嚥	嚮	嚶	嚴	囂	557	怕	怫	怦	怏	怺	恚	恁	恪	恷	恟	597	梟	梏	梭	梔	條	梛	梃	檮	梹	桴
478											518	嚼	囁	囃	囀	囈	囎	囑	囓	囗	囮	558	恊	恆	恍	恣	恃	恤	恂	恬	恫	恙	598	梵	梠	梺	椏	梍	桾	椁	棊	椈	棘
479											519	囹	圀	囿	圄	圉						559	悁	悍	惧	悃	悚						599	椢	椦	棡	椌	棍					
480		弌	丐	丕	个	丱	丶	丼	丿	乂	520		圈	國	圍	圓	團	圖	嗇	圜	圦	560		悄	悛	悖	悗	悒	悧	悋	惡	悸	600		棔	棧	棕	椶	椒	椄	棗	棣	椥
481	乖	乘	亂	亅	豫	亊	舒	弍	于	亞	521	圷	圸	坎	圻	址	坏	坩	埀	垈	坡	561	惠	惓	悴	忰	悽	惆	悵	惘	慍	愕	601	棹	棠	棯	椨	椪	椚	椣	椡	棆	楹
482	亟	亠	亢	亰	亳	亶	从	仍	仄	仆	522	坿	垉	垓	垠	垳	垤	垪	垰	埃	埆	562	愆	惶	惷	愀	惴	惺	愃	愡	惻	惱	602	楷	楜	楸	楫	楔	楾	楮	椹	楴	椽
483	仂	仗	仞	仭	仟	价	伉	佚	估	佛	523	埔	埒	埓	堊	埖	埣	堋	堙	堝	塲	563	愍	愎	慇	愾	愨	愧	慊	愿	愼	愬	603	楙	椰	楡	楞	楝	榁	楪	榲	榮	槐
484	佝	佗	佇	佶	侈	侏	侘	佻	佩	佰	524	堡	塢	塋	塰	毀	塒	堽	塹	墅	墹	564	愴	愽	慂	慄	慳	慷	慘	慙	慚	慫	604	榿	槁	槓	榾	槎	寨	槊	槝	榻	槃
485	侑	佯	來	侖	儘	俔	俟	俎	俘	俛	525	墟	墫	墺	壞	墻	墸	墮	壅	壓	壑	565	慴	慯	慥	慱	慟	慝	慓	慵	憙	憖	605	榧	樮	榑	榠	榜	榕	榴	槞	槨	樂
486	俑	俚	俐	俤	俥	倚	倨	倔	倪	倥	526	壗	壙	壘	壥	壜	壤	壟	壯	壺	壹	566	憇	憬	憔	憚	憊	憑	憫	憮	懌	懊	606	樛	槿	權	槹	槲	槧	樅	榱	樞	槭
487	倅	伜	俶	倡	倩	倬	俾	俯	們	倆	527	壻	壼	壽	夂	夊	夐	夛	梦	夥	夬	567	應	懷	懈	懃	懆	憺	懋	罹	懍	懦	607	樔	槫	樊	樒	櫁	樣	樓	橄	樌	橲
488	偃	假	會	偕	偐	偈	做	偖	偬	偸	528	夭	夲	夸	夾	竒	奕	奐	奎	奚	奘	568	懣	懶	懺	懴	懿	懽	懼	懾	戀	戈	608	樶	橸	橇	橢	橙	橦	橈	樸	樢	檐
489	傀	傚	傅	傴	傲						529	奢	奠	奧	奬	奩						569	戉	戍	戌	戔	戛						609	檍	檠	檄	檢	檣					
490		僉	僊	傳	僂	僖	僞	僥	僭	僣	530		奸	妁	妝	佞	侫	妣	妲	姆	姨	570		戞	戡	截	戮	戰	戲	戳	扁	扎	610		檗	蘗	檻	櫃	櫂	檸	檳	檬	櫞
491	僮	價	僵	儉	儁	儂	儖	儕	儔	儚	531	姜	妍	姙	姚	娥	娟	娑	娜	娉	娚	571	扞	扣	扛	扠	扨	扼	抂	抉	找	抒	611	櫑	櫟	檪	櫚	櫪	櫻	欅	蘖	櫺	欒
492	儡	儺	儷	儼	儻	儿	兀	兒	兌	兔	532	婀	婬	婉	娵	娶	婢	婪	媚	媼	媾	572	抓	抖	拔	抃	抔	拗	拑	抻	拏	拿	612	欖	鬱	欟	欸	欷	盜	欹	飮	歇	歃
493	兢	竸	兩	兪	兮	冀	冂	囘	册	冉	533	嫋	嫂	媽	嫣	嫗	嫦	嫩	嫖	嫺	嫻	573	拆	擔	拈	拜	拌	拊	拂	拇	抛	拉	613	歉	歐	歙	歔	歛	歟	歡	歸	歹	歿
494	冏	冑	冓	冕	冖	冤	冦	冢	冩	冪	534	嬌	嬋	嬖	嬲	嫐	嬪	嬶	嬾	孃	孅	574	挌	拮	拱	挧	挂	挈	拯	拵	捐	挾	614	殀	殄	殃	殍	殘	殕	殞	殤	殪	殫
495	冫	决	冱	冲	冰	况	冽	凅	凉	凛	535	孀	孑	孕	孚	孛	孥	孩	孰	孳	孵	575	捍	搜	捏	掖	掎	掀	掫	捶	掣	掏	615	殯	殲	殱	殳	殷	殼	毆	毋	毓	毟
496	几	處	凩	凭	凰	凵	凾	刄	刋	刔	536	學	斈	孺	宀	它	宦	宸	寃	寇	寉	576	掉	掟	掵	捫	捩	掾	揩	揀	揆	揣	616	毬	毫	毳	毯	麾	氈	氓	气	氛	氤
497	刎	刧	刪	刮	刳	刹	剏	剄	剋	剌	537	寔	寐	寤	實	寢	寞	寥	寫	寰	寶	577	揉	插	揶	揄	搖	搴	搆	搓	搦	搶	617	氣	汞	汕	汢	汪	沂	沍	沚	沁	沛
498	剞	剔	剪	剴	剩	剳	剿	剽	劍	劔	538	寳	尅	將	專	對	尓	尠	尢	尨	尸	578	攝	搗	搨	搏	摧	摯	摶	摎	攪	撕	618	汾	汨	汳	沒	沐	泄	泱	泓	沽	泗
499	劒	剱	劈	劑	辨						539	尹	屁	屆	屎	屓						579	撓	撥	撩	撈	撼						619	泅	泝	沮	沱	沾					
500		辧	劬	劭	劼	劵	勁	勍	勗	勞	540		屐	屏	孱	屬	屮	乢	屶	屹	岌	580		據	擒	擅	擇	撻	擘	擂	擱	擧	620		沺	泛	泯	泙	泪	洟	衍	洶	洫
501	勣	勦	飭	勠	勳	勵	勸	勹	匆	匈	541	岑	岔	妛	岫	岻	岶	岼	岷	峅	岾	581	舉	擠	擡	抬	擣	擯	攬	擶	擴	擲	621	洽	洸	洙	洵	洳	洒	洌	浣	涓	浤
502	甸	匍	匐	匏	匕	匚	匣	匯	匱	匳	542	峇	峙	峩	峽	峺	峭	嶌	峪	崋	崕	582	擺	攀	擽	攘	攜	攅	攤	攣	攫	攴	622	浚	浹	浙	涎	涕	濤	涅	淹	渕	渊
503	匸	區	卆	卅	丗	卉	卍	凖	卞	卩	543	崗	嵜	崟	崛	崑	崔	崢	崚	崙	崘	583	攵	攷	收	攸	畋	效	敖	敕	敍	敘	623	涵	淇	淦	涸	淆	淬	淞	淌	淨	淒
504	卮	夘	卻	卷	厂	厖	厠	厦	厥	厮	544	嵌	嵒	嵎	嵋	嵬	嵳	嵶	嶇	嶄	嶂	584	敞	敝	敲	數	斂	斃	變	斛	斟	斫	624	淅	淺	淙	淤	淕	淪	淮	渭	湮	渮
505	厰	厶	參	簒	雙	叟	曼	燮	叮	叨	545	嶢	嶝	嶬	嶮	嶽	嶐	嶷	嶼	巉	巍	585	斷	旃	旆	旁	旄	旌	旒	旛	旙	无	625	渙	湲	湟	渾	渣	湫	渫	湶	湍	渟
506	叭	叺	吁	吽	呀	听	吭	吼	吮	吶	546	巓	巒	巖	巛	巫	已	巵	帋	帚	帙	586	旡	旱	杲	昊	昃	旻	杳	昵	昶	昴	626	湃	渺	湎	渤	滿	渝	游	溂	溪	溘
507	吩	吝	呎	咏	呵	咎	呟	呱	呷	呰	547	帑	帛	帶	帷	幄	幃	幀	幎	幗	幔	587	昜	晏	晄	晉	晁	晞	晝	晤	晧	晨	627	滉	溷	滓	溽	溯	滄	溲	滔	滕	溏
508	咒	呻	咀	呶	咄	咐	咆	哇	咢	咸	548	幟	幢	幤	幇	幵	并	幺	麼	广	庠	588	晟	晢	晰	暃	暈	暎	暉	暄	暘	暝	628	溥	滂	溟	潁	漑	灌	滬	滸	滾	漿
509	咥	咬	哄	哈	咨						549	廁	廂	廈	廐	廏						589	曁	暹	曉	暾	暼						629	滲	漱	滯	漲	滌					
510		咫	哂	咤	咾	咼	哘	哥	哦	唏	550		廖	廣	廝	廚	廛	廢	廡	廨	廩	590		曄	暸	曖	曚	曠	昿	曦	曩	曰	630		漾	漓	滷	澆	潺	潸	澁	澀	潯
511	唔	哽	哮	哭	哺	哢	唹	啀	啣	啌	551	廬	廱	廳	廰	廴	廸	廾	弃	弉	彝	591	曵	曷	朏	朖	朞	朦	朧	霸	朮	朿	631	潛	濳	潭	澂	潼	潘	澎	澑	濂	潦
512	售	啜	啅	啖	啗	唸	唳	啝	喙	喀	552	彜	弋	弑	弖	弩	弭	弸	彁	彈	彌	592	朶	杁	朸	朷	杆	杞	杠	杙	杣	杤	632	澳	澣	澡	澤	澹	濆	澪	濟	濕	濬
513	咯	喊	喟	啻	啾	喘	喞	單	啼	喃	553	彎	弯	彑	彖	彗	彙	彡	彭	彳	彷	593	枉	杰	枩	杼	杪	枌	枋	枦	枡	枅	633	濔	濘	濱	濮	濛	瀉	瀋	濺	瀑	瀁
514	喩	喇	喨	嗚	嗅	嗟	嗄	嗜	嗤	嗔	554	徃	徂	彿	徊	很	徑	徇	從	徙	徘	594	枷	柯	枴	柬	枳	柩	枸	柤	柞	柝	634	瀏	濾	瀛	瀚	潴	瀝	瀘	瀟	瀰	瀾
515	嘔	嗷	嘖	嗾	嗽	嘛	嗹	噎	噐	營	555	徠	徨	徭	徼	忖	忻	忤	忸	忱	忝	595	柢	柮	枹	柎	柆	柧	檜	栞	框	栩	635	瀲	灑	灣	炙	炒	炯	烱	炬	炸	炳
516	嘴	嘶	嘲	嘸	噫	噤	嘯	噬	噪	嚆	556	悳	忿	怡	恠	怙	怐	怩	怎	怱	怛	596	桀	桍	栲	桎	梳	栫	桙	档	桷	桿	636	炮	烟	烋	烝	烙	焉	烽	焜	焙	煥

Appendix

13

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
637	煕	熈	煦	煢	煌	煖	煬	熏	燻	熄
638	熕	熨	熬	燗	熹	熾	燒	燉	燔	燎
639	燠	燬	燧	燵	燼					
640		燹	燿	爍	爐	爛	爨	爭	爬	爰
641	爲	爻	爼	爿	牀	牆	牋	牘	牴	牾
642	犂	犁	犇	犒	犖	犢	犧	犹	犲	狃
643	狆	狄	狎	狒	狢	狠	狡	狹	狷	倏
644	猗	猊	猜	猖	猝	猴	猯	猩	猥	猾
645	獎	獏	默	獗	獪	獨	獰	獸	獵	獻
646	獺	珈	玳	珎	玻	珀	珥	珮	珞	璢
647	琅	瑯	琥	珸	琲	琺	瑕	琿	瑟	瑙
648	瑁	瑜	瑩	瑰	瑣	瑪	瑶	瑾	璋	璞
649	璧	瓊	瓏	瓔	珱					
650		瓠	瓣	瓧	瓩	瓮	瓲	瓰	瓱	瓸
651	瓷	甄	甃	甅	甌	甎	甍	甕	甓	甞
652	甦	甬	甼	畄	畍	畊	畉	畛	畆	畚
653	畩	畤	畧	畫	畭	畸	當	疆	疇	畴
654	疊	疉	疂	疔	疚	疝	疥	疣	痂	疳
655	痃	疵	疽	疸	疼	疱	痍	痊	痒	痙
656	痣	痞	痾	痿	痼	瘁	痰	痺	痲	痳
657	瘋	瘍	瘉	瘟	瘧	瘠	瘡	瘢	瘤	瘴
658	瘰	瘻	癇	癈	癆	癜	癘	癡	癢	癨
659	癩	癪	癧	癬	癰					
660		癲	癶	癸	發	皀	皃	皈	皋	皎
661	皖	皓	晳	皚	皰	皴	皸	皹	皺	盂
662	盍	盖	盒	盞	盡	盥	盧	盪	蘯	盻
663	眈	眇	眄	眩	眤	眞	眥	眦	眛	眷
664	眸	睇	睚	睨	睫	睛	睥	睿	睾	睹
665	瞎	瞋	瞑	瞠	瞞	瞰	瞶	瞹	瞿	瞼
666	瞽	瞻	矇	矍	矗	矚	矜	矣	矮	矼
667	砌	砒	礦	砠	礪	硅	碎	硴	碆	硼
668	碚	碌	碣	碵	碪	碯	磑	磆	磋	磔
669	碾	碼	磅	磊	磬					
670		磧	磚	磽	磴	礇	礒	礑	礙	礬
671	礫	祀	祠	祗	祟	祚	祕	祓	祺	祿
672	禊	禝	禧	齋	禪	禮	禳	禹	禺	秉
673	秕	秧	秬	秡	秣	稈	稍	稘	稙	稠
674	稟	禀	稱	稻	稾	稷	穃	穗	穉	穡
675	穢	穩	龝	穰	穹	穽	窈	窗	窕	窘
676	窖	窩	竈	窰	窶	竅	竄	窿	邃	竇

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
677	竊	竍	竏	竕	竓	站	竚	竝	竡	竢
678	竦	竭	竰	笂	笏	笊	笆	笳	笘	笙
679	笞	笵	笨	笶	筐					
680		筺	笄	筍	笋	筌	筅	筵	筥	筴
681	筧	筰	筱	筬	筮	箝	箘	箟	箍	箜
682	箚	箋	箒	箏	筝	箙	篋	篁	篌	篏
683	箴	篆	篝	篩	簑	簔	篦	篥	籠	簀
684	簇	簓	篳	篷	簗	簍	篶	簣	簧	簪
685	簟	簷	簫	簽	籌	籃	籔	籏	籀	籐
686	籘	籟	籤	籖	籥	籬	籵	粃	粐	粤
687	粭	粢	粫	粡	粨	粳	粲	粱	粮	粹
688	粽	糀	糅	糂	糘	糒	糜	糢	鬻	糯
689	糲	糴	糶	糺	紆					
690		紂	紜	紕	紊	絅	絋	紮	紲	紿
691	紵	絆	絳	絖	絎	絲	絨	絮	絏	絣
692	經	綉	絛	綏	絽	綛	綺	綮	綣	綵
693	緇	綽	綫	總	綢	綯	緜	綸	綟	綰
694	緘	緝	緤	緞	緻	緲	緡	縅	縊	縣
695	縡	縒	縱	縟	縉	縋	縢	繆	繦	縻
696	縵	縹	繃	縷	縲	縺	繧	繝	繖	繞
697	繙	繚	繹	繪	繩	繼	繻	纃	緕	繽
698	辮	繿	纈	纉	續	纒	纐	纓	纔	纖
699	纎	纛	纜	缸	缺					
700		罅	罌	罍	罎	罐	网	罕	罔	罘
701	罟	罠	罨	罩	罧	罸	羂	羆	羃	羈
702	羇	羌	羔	羞	羝	羚	羣	羯	羲	羹
703	羮	羶	羸	譱	翅	翆	翊	翕	翔	翡
704	翦	翩	翳	翹	飜	耆	耄	耋	耒	耘
705	耙	耜	耡	耨	耿	耻	聊	聆	聒	聘
706	聚	聟	聢	聨	聳	聲	聰	聶	聹	聽
707	聿	肄	肆	肅	肛	肓	肚	肭	冐	肬
708	胛	胥	胙	胝	胄	胚	胖	脉	胯	胱
709	脛	脩	脣	脯	腋					
710		隋	腆	脾	腓	腑	胼	腱	腮	腥
711	腦	腴	膃	膈	膊	膀	膂	膠	膕	膤
712	膣	腟	膓	膩	膰	膵	膾	膸	膽	臀
713	臂	膺	臉	臍	臑	臙	臘	臈	臚	臟
714	臠	臧	臺	臻	臾	舁	舂	舅	與	舊
715	舍	舐	舖	舩	舫	舸	舳	艀	艙	艘
716	艝	艚	艟	艤	艢	艨	艪	艫	舮	艱

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
717	艷	艸	艾	芍	芒	芫	芟	芻	芬	苡
718	苣	苟	苒	苴	苳	苺	莓	范	苻	苹
719	苞	茆	苜	茉	苙					
720		茵	茴	茖	茲	茱	荀	茹	荐	荅
721	茯	茫	茗	茘	莅	莚	莪	莟	莢	莖
722	茣	莎	莇	莊	荼	莵	荳	荵	莠	莉
723	莨	菴	萓	菫	菎	菽	萃	菘	萋	菁
724	菷	萇	菠	菲	萍	萢	萠	莽	萸	蔆
725	菻	葭	萪	萼	蕚	蒄	葷	葫	蒭	葮
726	蒂	葩	葆	萬	葯	葹	萵	蓊	葢	蒹
727	蒿	蒟	蓙	蓍	蒻	蓚	蓐	蓁	蓆	蓖
728	蒡	蔡	蓿	蓴	蔗	蔘	蔬	蔟	蔕	蔔
729	蓼	蕀	蕣	蕘	蕈					
730		蕁	蘂	蕋	蕕	薀	薤	薈	薑	薊
731	薨	蕭	薔	薛	藪	薇	薜	蕷	蕾	薐
732	藉	薺	藏	薹	藐	藕	藝	藥	藜	藹
733	蘊	蘓	蘋	藾	藺	蘆	蘢	蘚	蘰	蘿
734	虍	乕	虔	號	虧	虱	蚓	蚣	蚩	蚪
735	蚋	蚌	蚶	蚯	蛄	蛆	蚰	蛉	蠣	蚫
736	蛔	蛞	蛩	蛬	蛟	蛛	蛯	蜒	蜆	蜈
737	蜀	蜃	蛻	蜑	蜉	蜍	蛹	蜊	蜴	蜿
738	蜷	蜻	蜥	蜩	蜚	蝠	蝟	蝸	蝌	蝎
739	蝴	蝗	蝨	蝮	蝙					
740		蝓	蝣	蝪	蠅	螢	螟	螂	螯	蟋
741	螽	蟀	蟐	雖	螫	蟄	螳	蟇	蟆	螻
742	蟯	蟲	蟠	蠏	蠍	蟾	蟶	蟷	蠎	蟒
743	蠑	蠖	蠕	蠢	蠡	蠱	蠶	蠹	蠧	蠻
744	衄	衂	衒	衙	衞	衢	衫	袁	衾	袞
745	衵	衽	袵	衲	袂	袗	袒	袮	袙	袢
746	袍	袤	袰	袿	袱	裃	裄	裔	裘	裙
747	裝	裹	褂	裼	裴	裨	裲	褄	褌	褊
748	褓	襃	褞	褥	褪	褫	襁	襄	褻	褶
749	褸	襌	褝	襠	襞					
750		襦	襤	襭	襪	襯	襴	襷	襾	覃
751	覈	覊	覓	覘	覡	覩	覦	覬	覯	覲
752	覺	覽	覿	觀	觚	觜	觝	觧	觴	觸
753	訃	訖	訐	訌	訛	訝	訥	訶	詁	詛
754	詒	詆	詈	詼	詭	詬	詢	誅	誂	誄
755	誨	誡	誑	誥	誦	誚	誣	諄	諍	諂
756	諚	諫	諳	諧	諤	諱	謔	諠	諢	諷

First Three Digits	Last Digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
757	諞	諛	諌	謇	謚	諡	謖	謐	謗	謠
758	謳	鞫	謦	謫	謾	謨	譁	譌	譏	譎
759	證	譖	譛	譚	譫					
760		譟	譬	譯	譴	譽	讀	讌	讎	讒
761	讓	讖	讙	讚	谺	豁	谿	豈	豌	豎
762	豐	豕	豢	豬	豸	豺	貂	貉	貅	貊
763	貍	貎	貔	豼	貘	戝	貭	貪	貽	貲
764	貳	貮	貶	賈	賁	賤	賣	賚	賽	賺
765	賻	贄	贅	贊	贇	贏	贍	贐	齎	贓
766	賍	贔	贖	赧	赭	赱	赳	趁	趙	跂
767	趾	趺	跏	跚	跖	跌	跛	跋	跪	跫
768	跟	跣	跼	踈	踉	跿	踝	踞	踐	踟
769	蹂	踵	踰	踴	蹊					
770		蹇	蹉	蹌	蹐	蹈	蹙	蹤	蹠	踪
771	蹣	蹕	蹶	蹲	蹼	躁	躇	躅	躄	躋
772	躊	躓	躑	躔	躙	躪	躡	躬	躰	軆
773	躱	躾	軅	軈	軋	軛	軣	軼	軻	軫
774	軾	輊	輅	輕	輒	輙	輓	輜	輟	輛
775	輌	輦	輳	輻	輹	轅	轂	輾	轌	轉
776	轆	轎	轗	轜	轢	轣	轤	辜	辟	辣
777	辭	辯	辷	迚	迥	迢	迪	迯	邇	迴
778	逅	迹	迺	逑	逕	逡	逍	逞	逖	逋
779	逧	逶	逵	逹	迸					
780		遏	遐	遑	遒	逎	遉	逾	遖	遘
781	遞	遨	遯	遶	隨	遲	邂	遽	邁	邀
782	邊	邉	邏	邨	邯	邱	邵	郢	郤	扈
783	郛	鄂	鄒	鄙	鄲	鄰	酊	酖	酘	酣
784	酥	酩	酳	酲	醋	醉	醂	醢	醫	醯
785	醪	醵	醴	醺	釀	釁	釉	釋	釐	釖
786	釟	釡	釛	釼	釵	釶	鈞	釿	鈔	鈬
787	鈕	鈑	鉞	鉗	鉅	鉉	鉤	鉈	銕	鈿
788	鉋	鉐	銜	銖	銓	銛	鉚	鋏	銹	銷
789	鋩	錏	鋺	鍄	錮					
790		錙	錢	錚	錣	錺	錵	錻	鍜	鍠
791	鍼	鍮	鍖	鎰	鎬	鎭	鎔	鎹	鏖	鏗
792	鏨	鏥	鏘	鏃	鏝	鏐	鏈	鏤	鐚	鐔
793	鐓	鐃	鐇	鐐	鐶	鐫	鐵	鐡	鐺	鑁
794	鑒	鑄	鑛	鑠	鑢	鑞	鑪	鈩	鑰	鑵
795	鑷	鑽	鑚	鑼	鑾	钁	鑿	閂	閇	閊
796	閔	閖	閘	閙	閠	閨	閧	閭	閼	閻

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
797	閹	閾	闊	濶	闃	闍	闌	闕	闔	闖
798	關	闡	闥	闢	阡	阨	阮	阯	陂	陌
799	陏	陋	陷	陜	陞					
800		陝	陟	陦	陲	陬	隍	隘	隕	隗
801	險	隧	隱	隲	隰	隴	隶	隸	隹	雎
802	雋	雉	雍	襍	雜	霍	雕	雹	霄	霆
803	霈	霓	霎	霑	霏	霖	霙	霤	霪	霰
804	霹	霽	霾	靄	靆	靈	靂	靉	靜	靠
805	靤	靦	靨	勒	靫	靱	靹	鞅	靼	鞁
806	靺	鞆	鞋	鞏	鞐	鞜	鞨	鞦	鞣	鞳
807	鞴	韃	韆	韈	韋	韜	韭	齏	韲	竟
808	韶	韵	頏	頌	頸	頤	頡	頷	頽	顆
809	顏	顋	顫	顯	顰					
810		顱	顴	顳	颪	颯	颱	颶	飄	飃
811	飆	飩	飫	餃	餉	餒	餔	餘	餡	餝
812	餞	餤	餠	餬	餮	餽	餾	饂	饉	饅
813	饐	饋	饑	饒	饌	饕	馗	馘	馥	馭
814	馮	馼	駟	駛	駝	駘	駑	駭	駮	駱
815	駲	駻	駸	騁	騏	騅	駢	騙	騫	騷
816	驅	驂	驀	驃	騾	驕	驍	驛	驗	驟
817	驢	驥	驤	驩	驫	驪	骭	骰	骼	髀
818	髏	髑	髓	體	髞	髟	髢	髣	髦	髯
819	髫	髮	髴	髱	髷					
820		髻	鬆	鬘	鬚	鬟	鬢	鬣	鬥	鬧
821	鬨	鬩	鬪	鬮	鬯	鬲	魄	魃	魏	魍
822	魎	魑	魘	魴	鮓	鮃	鮑	鮖	鮗	鮟
823	鮠	鮨	鮴	鯀	鯊	鮹	鯆	鯏	鯑	鯒
824	鯣	鯢	鯤	鯔	鯡	鰺	鯲	鯱	鯰	鰕
825	鰔	鰉	鰓	鰌	鰆	鰈	鰒	鰊	鰄	鰮
826	鰛	鰥	鰤	鰡	鰰	鱇	鰲	鱆	鰾	鱚
827	鱠	鱧	鱶	鱸	鳧	鳬	鳰	鴉	鴈	鳫
828	鴃	鴆	鴪	鴦	鶯	鴣	鴟	鵄	鴕	鴒
829	鵁	鴿	鴾	鵆	鵈					
830		鵝	鵞	鵤	鵑	鵐	鵙	鵲	鶉	鶇
831	鶫	鵯	鵺	鶚	鶤	鶩	鶲	鷄	鷁	鶻
832	鶸	鶺	鷆	鷏	鷂	鷙	鷓	鷸	鷦	鷭
833	鷯	鷽	鸚	鸛	鸞	鹵	鹹	鹽	麁	麈
834	麋	麌	麒	麕	麑	麝	麥	麩	麸	麪
835	麭	靡	黌	黎	黏	黐	黔	黜	點	黝
836	黠	黥	黨	黯	黴	黶	黷	黹	黻	黼

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
837	黽	鼇	鼈	皷	鼕	鼡	鼬	鼾	齊	齒
838	齔	齣	齟	齠	齡	齦	齧	齬	齪	齷
839	齲	齶	龕	龜	龠					
840		堯	槇	遙	瑤	凜	熙			

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

First Three Digits	Last Digit 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9

Specifications

SoftBank 830SH

Weight	Approximately 105 g
Continuous Talk Time	Approximately 260 minutes (3G) Approximately 240 minutes (GSM)
Continuous Standby Time	Approximately 350 hours (3G) Approximately 320 hours (GSM) (handset closed)
Charging Time (power off)	AC Charger: Approximately 130 minutes In-Car Charger: Approximately 140 minutes
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 49 x 97 x 17.6 mm (handset closed, without protruding parts)
Maximum Output	0.25 W (3G) 2.0 W (GSM)

- Above values calculated with battery installed.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals.
- Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment, status, settings, etc.
- Display employs precision technology, however, some pixels may appear brighter/darker.

Handset Materials

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing (Display side), Display ornament	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: discontinuous deposition)
Housing (Display back, Keypad side, Keypad back), hinge cover (Keypad side), Battery Cover	ABS resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
Hinge housing (left & right, Display side)	Nylon-based resin (with glass fibers)/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic and urethane painting)
External Display ornament panel	Acrylic resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: printed foil)
Display window, External Camera window	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	ABS resin (infrared grade)
Multi Selector (center, Cursor Keys)	ABS resin (chrome plating on nickel plating)
Start Key, Power On/Off Key, Mail Key, Yahoo! Keitai Key, Shortcuts & A/a Key, Clear/Back Key, Dictionary & Text Key, Side Keys, Keypad	PC resin/Painting
Memory Card Slot Cover, Headphone Port Cover	Urethane-based resin, PC resin/Acrylic UV curing painting (sealer: acrylic painting)
External Device Port Cover	Elastomeric resin/Urethane painting
Display stop rubber	Silicon rubber
Battery, screw cover	PC resin
Charging Terminals	SUS/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)
Screw (all pieces)	SWCH12A/Ni plating
USIM pin	Copper alloy/Gold plating (sealer: nickel)

Accessories

Battery

Voltage	3.7V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	780 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 37.7 x 44.4 x 4.6 mm (without protruding parts)

Desktop Holder

Input Voltage/ Current	DC 5.4V/700 mA
Output Voltage/ Current	DC 5.4V/700 mA
Charging Temperature	5°C to 35°C
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 65.5 x 23 x 124 mm

Basic Operations

Wallpaper/Standby Window

Standby Window	3 tags (100 characters each)

Text Entry

User Dictionary	250 entries (5 per reading) Word: 60 bytes Reading: 8 hiragana
Acquire Dictionary	5 dictionaries
Paste List	10 text strings
Recoverable Deleted Characters	60 KB

Phone Book

Entry	1,000 entries
Name/Reading	Last/First: 32 characters each
Phone Number	5 numbers (32 digits each)
Mail Address	5 addresses (128 characters each)
Category	16 Categories
Address	Postal Code: 20 characters Country: 32 characters Others: 64 characters each
Office	Office Name/Division/Post: 32 characters each
Homepage	1,024 bytes
Note	256 characters
Mail Groups	20 Groups (20 members each) Group name: 16 characters

Data Folder

Memory	50 MB (shared with Templates folder and S! Appli Library)

Calling

Dialed Numbers	Dialed Numbers: 30 records Dialed Frequency: 10 records
Received Calls	30 records
Answer Phone/ Caller Voice	20 messages or 90 seconds
Auto Answer List	10 numbers

Messaging

Memory	Received Msg.	10 MB or 3,000 messages
	Drafts	5 MB (or 1,000 messages for Sent Messages)
	Sent Messages	
	Unsent Messages	
	Templates	50 MB (shared with Data Folder and S! Appli Library)
PC Mail/S! Mail Subject	512 single-byte characters	
PC Mail/S! Mail Message	Approximately 30,000 single-byte characters	
SMS Message	160 single-byte alphanumerics	
Auto Resend	2 times	
Attachment	20 files or 300 KB	
Send Reservation	10 messages	
Speed Dial/ Mail	100 numbers/addresses	
Signature	256 single-byte characters	
Recipient	20 numbers/addresses	
Folder	20 folders (20 Auto Sort Keys each)	
Chat Folder	Memory	300 messages per folder
	Folder	10 folders (20 members each)
Graphic Mail	1 sound or Flash® file, or 40 images/ My Pictograms (with 1 sound or Flash® file)	
3D Pictogram	150 characters	
Auto Reply	20 numbers/addresses (256 single-byte characters each)	
Anti Spam Measures	Individual	20 entries
	Permitted List	20 entries

PC Mail Settings

PC Mail Account	Account	3 accounts
	Account Name	20 characters
Set Receiving	User Name	128 characters
	Password	32 characters
	ReceivingServer	128 characters
	Port Number	1 to 65535
Set Sending	Sender Name	20 characters
	Mail Address	128 characters
PC Mail DL	Individual Address	20 addresses

Yahoo! Keitai & PC Site Browser

Download	Yahoo! Keitai	300 KB per page
	PC Site Browser	1 MB per file
History	300 pages	
URL Entry Log	10 URLs	
Bookmarks/ Saved Pages	100 pages	
Tab	3 tabs at one time	
Input Memory	20 entries	
Streaming History	10 URLs	
RSS Feeds	30 entries (30 KB per entry)	

Dictionary

Preloaded Dictionaries	Meikyo Mobile Japanese Dictionary: Approximately 47,100 words/phrases Genius Mobile EJ Dictionary: Approximately 45,700 words/phrases Genius Mobile JE Dictionary: Approximately 55,800 words/phrases

Camera & Imaging

Mobile Camera

Effective Pixels	2.0 Megapixels
Auto Shut-off Time	Approximately 3 minutes

Photo Camera

Zoom	1x - 20x	
Picture Size (W x H dots)	2M	1200 x 1600 (UXGA)
	1.2M	960 x 1280 (Quad-VGA)
	VGA	480 x 640
	Mail L	240 x 320 (QVGA)
	Mail S	120 x 160 (QQVGA)
Scanner Image Size (W x H dots)	Free, 1200 x 640, 480 x 1488, 1280 x 960	
File Format	JPEG	
Memory	Approximately 3,200 files with default settings	
File Name	ImageXXX.jpg (XXX: 3 digits)	
Shooting Distance	Macro: 10 cm	
Other	Use 40 KB or smaller transparent PNG files as Frames	

Video Camera

Zoom	1x - 9.4x (SubQCIF)	
Record Size (W x H dots)	Extended Video	320 x 240 (QVGA)
		240 x 176 (HQVGA)
		176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
	For Message	176 x 144 (QCIF)
		128 x 96 (SubQCIF)
File Format	3GP	
Recording Time per Shot	Extended Video	30 minutes on Memory Card
	For Message	295 KB
File Name	videoXXX.3gp (XXX: 3 digits)	
Recording Distance	1.5 m in good light	

Editing Images

Picture Editor	Resize (W x H dots)	Wallpaper (240 x 320) Power On/Off (240 x 320) Incoming Call (180 x 120) Alarm (240 x 104) Cut
	Retouch	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
	Paste	16 characters
	Correction	52 x 52 dots or larger JPEG/PNG images
Composite	Merge Panorama	JPEG images between W 48 x H 64 dots and 240 x 320 dots
	Split Picture	

Media Player & S! Applications

Media Player

Supported Formats	AAC (.mp4/.3gp/.m4a), Secure AAC (Secure SD-Audio standard) (Some files may not play depending on sampling frequency and bit rate)	
Editing Video	Size	W 176 x H 144 dots or smaller
	Subtitle	10 subtitles (48 single-byte characters each)

S! Applications

Memory	100 items or 50 MB (shared with Templates folder and other folders in Data Folder)

Handy Extras

PIM/Lifestyle Tools

Calendar*/ Tasks	300 entries, Subject: 32 characters Description: 128 characters Location: 16 characters Set Holiday: 10 holidays
Alarms	5 entries, Subject: 9 characters
Calculator	999,999,999,999
Expenses Memo	30 entries (999,999.99 yen each)
Osaifu-Keitai®	Remote Lock password: 5 - 16 single-byte alphanumerics
Pretense Call	Name: 10 characters Phone Number: 17 digits Calling Timing: 5 options (up to 3 minutes later)

*Preset holidays are based on Japanese calendar as of July 2008.

Timer/Clock Tools

Stopwatch	23 hours 59 minutes 59.9 seconds in 0.1-second increments Lap time: 4 records
Countdown Timer	60 minutes in 1-second increments
World Clock	City name: 16 characters

Doc./Rec. Tools

Document Viewer	Supported Formats	PDF (.pdf) Microsoft® Excel® (.xls) Microsoft® Word (.doc) Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt)
	File Size	10 MB
Notepad	500 entries (8,192 characters each)	
Voice Recorder	For Message	Approximately 3 minutes per file
	Extended Voice	99 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds
Scan Barcode (Continuous Mode)	UPC/JAN	50 codes
	QR Code	16 codes
Create QR Code	Equivalent of 513 digits, 311 alphanumerics or 131 kanji	
Scan Text	256 characters	

Entertainment

S! Quick News	Special: 1 item News Flash: 1 item General: 4 items
e-Books	Copy text strings of up to 20 characters

Communication Services

S! Loop

S! Loop List	5 items

S! Friend's Status

Member	30 members
My Status	Name: 7 characters Comment: 15 characters Status Label: 4 characters
Status Templates	Template name: 12 characters

S! Circle Talk

Participant	11 members
Speak Time	30 seconds each
Member List	30 entries (10 members per Group)

Connectivity & File Backup

Infrared

Infrared Transfer	IrMC 1.1	
	Range	Within 20 cm

Memory Card

Backup File Name	yymmddXX* (XX: 2 digits/alphabets)

*yymmdd for Contents Keys.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Log	10 Backup/Restore/ Synchronization records

Network Settings

Add Network	5 Networks Country/Network code: 3 digits Name: 25 single-byte characters

Reference URLs

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/

microSD™ Memory Card Compatibility

From PC (Japanese)
http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/peripherals/sd_support.html
From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/

S! Addressbook Back-up

http://mb.softbank.jp/mb/en/service/advanced/sab/

SVG-T

From Handset (Japanese)
http://shweb.sharp.co.jp/svgt/index_pdc.html

Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting

From PC
http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/
From Handset (Japanese)
http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/

Memory Card Structure & Contents

Memory Card Structure				Contents (Location when Viewed on Handset)
DCIM	XXXSHARP			Still images in DCIM
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Local Contents		SD Local Contents
		Mail		Messaging folder backups (Received Msg., Sent Messages and Drafts)
		My Items	Book	e-Book files in Data Folder (Books)
			Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai Bookmarks
			Character	PNG files in Data Folder (Character)
			Custom Screens	Customized Screen files in Data Folder (Customized Screen)
			Flash(R)	Flash® Wallpaper files in Data Folder (Flash®)
			Flash(R) Ringtones	Flash® ringtones in Data Folder (Flash® Ringtones)
			Games and More	S! Applications
			Hot Status Template	Template files in Data Folder (Status Templates)
			Message Templates	Graphic Mail templates in Templates folder
			Music	Music files in Data Folder (Music)
			Other Documents	Other files in Data Folder (Other Documents)
			Pictograms	GIF files in Data Folder (My Pictograms)
			Pictures	Still images in Data Folder (Pictures)
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies and other sound files in Data Folder (Ring Songs·Tones)
			Videos	Video files in Data Folder (Videos)
			Virtual Space	S! Town files
		SH_Folder		Application management files
		Utility		Backup files (Phone Book), etc.
	SHARP	MOBILE		Backup files (User Dictionary), etc.
SD_AUDIO				SD-Audio files for Media Player (SD AUDIO)

Menu List

Messaging

Function		Refer to
Received Msg.		P.4-14
Create Message		P.4-4
Retrieve New Msg.		P.4-12
Drafts		P.4-22
Templates		P.4-9
Sent Messages		P.4-14
Unsent Messages		P.4-23
Chat Folder		P.4-17
Server Mail Box	Mail List	P.4-12
	Retrieve All Mails	-
	Delete All Mails	-
	Mailbox Volume	-
Create New SMS		P.4-7
Settings	Address Settings	P.4-3
	General Settings	P.12-8
	S! Mail Settings	P.12-9
	PC Mail Settings	P.4-20
	SMS Settings	P.12-9
	Speed Dial/Mail	P.4-8
	Set Mail Group	P.4-18
Memory Status		-

■ Settings: General Settings

Function		Refer to
Send/ Compose	Delivery Report	P.12-8
	Reply to Settings	-
	Auto Reply	P.4-13
	Set Quick Reply	P.4-13
	Auto Resend	P.4-2
	Sending Status	-
Receive	Message Notice	P.12-8
	Link to Feeling	P.12-8
	3D Pictogram	P.12-8
	Animation View	-
Anti Spam Measures		P.4-16
Report Spam		-
Scroll Unit		P.12-8
Message List View		P.12-8
Address View		P.12-8
Received Msg. View		P.12-8
Sent Msg. View		P.12-8
Auto Delete	Received Msg.	P.12-8
	Sent Messages	P.12-8

■ Settings: S! Mail Settings

Function		Refer to
Message DL(Japan)		P.12-9
Message DL(Abroad)		P.12-9
Signature Settings		P.4-8
Picture Appearance		P.12-9
Auto Play File	Pictures	P.12-9
	Sounds	P.12-9
Send File Settings		-

■ Settings: PC Mail Settings

Function	Refer to
PC Mail Account	P.4-20
PC Mail DL	P.12-9
Check New Mail	P.12-9
Word wrap	P.12-9

■ Settings: SMS Settings

Function	Refer to
Expiry Time	P.12-9
Message Center	-
Char-code	-

Yahoo! Keitai

Function	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	P.5-3
Bookmarks	P.5-7
Saved Pages	P.5-7
Enter URL	P.5-3
History	P.5-3
PC Site Browser	P.5-4
Browser Settings	P.12-10

PC Site Browser

Function		Refer to
Homepage		P.5-4
Bookmarks		P.5-7
Saved Pages		P.5-7
Enter URL		P.5-4
History		P.5-4
RSS Feed		P.5-8
Yahoo! Keitai		P.5-3
PC Site Browser Settings	Font Size	P.12-10
	Scroll Settings	P.12-10
	Cursor Settings	P.12-10
	Downloads	P.12-10
	Memory Operation	P.12-10
	Security Settings	-
	Download to	P.12-10
	Initialized Browser	P.12-10
	Reset Settings	P.12-10
	Warning Message	P.12-10
	Zoom Factor	P.5-9
	Zoom Area	P.5-9

Browser Settings

Function	Refer to
Font Size	P.12-10
Scroll Unit	P.12-10
Cursor Settings	P.12-10
Downloads	P.12-10
Memory Operation	P.12-10
Security Settings	-
Download to	P.12-10
Initialized Browser	P.12-10
Reset Settings	P.12-10

S! Appli

Function	Refer to
S! Appli Library	P.7-11
Osaifu-Keitai	P.8-11
Demand History	P.7-11
Settings	P.12-12
Information	-

Settings

Function		Refer to
Application Volume		P.12-12
Backlight		-
Vibration		-
Synchronization		-
Communication		-
Calls & Alarms		P.12-12
Screensaver	Switch On/Off	P.7-12
	Activation Time	P.12-12
	Stop Auto Start	-
Set to Default		P.12-12
Memory All Clear		P.12-12

Dictionary

Function	Refer to
Dictionary	P.2-13

Camera

Photo Camera

Function		Refer to
Shooting Settings	Exposure	P.6-4
	Focus Setting	P.6-12
Modes	Add Frame	P.6-6
	Continuous Shoot	P.6-6
	Camera Effects	P.6-7
	Panorama/Scanner	P.6-7
Barcode/Scan		P.8-22
Data Folder		P.6-4
Picture Size		P.6-12
Scene		P.6-12
Picture Quality		P.12-11
Self-timer		P.6-6
Settings	Display Indicators	-
	Shutter Sound	P.12-11
	Save Pictures to	P.12-11
	Auto Save	P.12-11
	Panorama Settings	-
Help		P.6-4

Video Camera

Function		Refer to
Record Settings	Exposure	P.6-4
	Focus Setting	P.6-12
Display Size		P.12-11
Data Folder		P.6-5
Record Time/Size		P.6-12
Microphone		P.12-11
Video Quality		P.12-11
Self-timer		P.6-6
Settings	Save Videos to	P.12-11
	Auto Save	P.12-11
Help		P.6-4

Entertainment

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News		P.8-26
S! Information Channel/ Weather	What's New	P.8-27
	Back Issue	P.8-27
	Registration/Cancel	P.8-27
	Get Latest Contents	P.8-38
	Notification	-
	Weather Indicator	P.8-27
BookSurfing		P.8-28
e-Book Viewer		P.8-28

S! Quick News

Function		Refer to
S! Quick News List		P.8-26
S! Loop List		P.8-37
Settings	Automatic Update	P.8-37
	Show Image	-
	Check Schedule	P.8-37
	Change Skin	P.8-37
	Delete S! Quick News Lists	-

S! Information Channel/Weather: Weather Indicator

Function		Refer to
Weather		P.8-38
Manual Update		P.8-27
Settings	Standby Setting	P.12-13
	Weather Notif.	-
	Icon Update	P.12-13

Tools

PIM/LifestyleTools

Function	Refer to
Calendar	P.8-3
Alarms	P.8-7
Tasks	P.8-5
Calculator	P.8-9
Expenses Memo	P.8-10
Osaifu-Keitai	P.8-11
Pretense Call	P.8-14

PIM/LifestyleTools: Osaifu-Keitai

Function		Refer to
Lifestyle-Appli		P.8-11
IC Card Settings	IC Card Status	-
	IC Card Lock	P.8-12
	Remote Lock	P.8-12
	Interface Settings	-
	Balance Info	P.8-31
	Set to Default	P.12-13

Timer/Clock Tools

Function	Refer to
Stopwatch	P.8-15
Countdown Timer	P.8-16
World Clock	P.8-17
Hour Minder	P.8-18

Doc./Rec. Tools

Function		Refer to
Search		P.2-14
Document Viewer		P.8-19
Notepad		P.8-20
Voice Recorder	Record Time	P.8-34
	Ring Songs·Tones	P.8-21
	Save Recording to	P.8-34
Barcode/ Scan	Scan Barcode	P.8-22
	Open Barcode	P.8-35
	Create QR Code	P.8-23
	Scan Card	P.8-24
	Scan Text	P.8-25
	Scanned Results	P.8-35
Phone Help		P.8-2

Data Folder

Function	Refer to
Pictures	P.2-18
DCIM	P.2-18
Ring Songs·Tones	P.8-21
S! Appli	P.7-11
Music	P.2-18
Videos	P.2-18
Lifestyle-Appli	P.8-11
Books	P.2-18
Customized Screen	P.2-5
Status Templates	P.2-18
Flash®	P.2-18
Other Documents	P.2-18
Memory Status	P.2-18

Media Player

Function	Refer to
Music	P.7-4
Videos	P.7-6
Streaming	P.5-10

■ Music

Function		Refer to
Last Played Music		P.7-13
My Music		P.7-8
SD AUDIO		P.7-4
Download Music		P.7-3
Music Search		P.7-3
Settings	Sound Effects	P.7-13
	Playback Mode	P.7-13

■ Videos

Function		Refer to
Last Played Video		P.7-13
My Videos		P.7-6
SD VIDEO		P.7-6
Download Videos		P.7-3
Settings	Playback Mode	P.7-13
	Backlight	P.12-12
	Display Size	P.7-6
	Sound Effects	P.7-13
	Web Link Setting	P.12-12

Communication

Function	Refer to
S! Town	P.9-2
S! Loop	P.9-2
S! Friend's Status	P.9-3
S! Circle Talk	P.9-7

Phone

Function		Refer to
Phone Book		P.2-17
Add New Entry		P.2-15
Information		P.1-17
Call Log		P.3-6
Play Messages		P.3-3
Call Voicemail		P.3-9
Category Control		P.2-16
My Details		P.1-14
Speed Dial/Mail		P.3-5
Mail Groups		P.4-18
S! Addressbook Backup		P.11-10
Ph.Book Settings	Sort Entries	P.2-17
	Select Phone Book	P.12-6
	Save New Entry	P.12-6
	New Number Prompt	P.12-6
Manage Entries	Copy All	-
	Memory Status	P.2-15
	Delete All	P.2-26

Settings

Phone Settings

Function		Refer to
Mode Settings		P.12-2
Display		P.12-3
Customize		P.2-23
Sounds & Alerts		P.2-6
Date & Time		P.12-2
Set Key Light		P.12-4
言語選択 (Language)		P.12-3
User Dictionary		P.2-12
Ringer Output		P.12-5
Earpiece Volume		P.3-10
Change Menu		P.1-11
Locks		P.10-2
Software Update		P.13-5
Master Reset	Reset Settings	P.12-16
	Reset All	P.12-16

Phone Settings: Display

Function		Refer to
Wallpaper		P.2-4
System Graphics		P.12-3
Display Effects		P.12-3
Font Settings		P.2-2
Standby Display	Clock/Calendar	P.12-4
	Standby Window	P.2-3
	Show Indicators	P.12-4
	Show Operator Name	-
Greeting Message		-
External Display	Duration	P.12-4
	Messages	P.12-4
	Display Date&Time	-
	Clock Type	-
	Caller Display	P.12-4
Backlight		P.12-3
Display Saving		P.12-3
Dial Number		-

Phone Settings: Sounds & Alerts

Function	Refer to
Volume	P.12-5
Ringtone/videos	P.2-6
System Sounds	P.12-5
Vibration	P.2-6
Event Light	P.12-5
Status Light	P.12-5
Any Key Answer	P.12-5

Phone Settings: Date & Time

Function	Refer to
Set Date/Time	P.12-2
Time Correction	P.12-2
Daylight Saving	P.12-2
Set Time Zone	P.12-2
Clock/Calendar	P.12-4
World Clock	P.8-17
Alarms	P.8-7
Set Holiday	-
Time Format	P.12-2
Date Format	P.12-2
Calendar Format	P.12-2

Phone Settings: Locks

Function	Refer to
PIN Entry	P.10-2
Change PIN2	P.10-4
Function Lock	P.10-2
IP Service Setting	P.12-15
Application Lock	P.10-3
History Lock	P.10-3
Show Secret Data	P.10-3
Set Lock Message	P.10-4
Chg. Handset Code	P.1-16

Connectivity

Function		Refer to
Infrared	Switch On/Off	P.11-3
	Send All	P.11-3
Mass Storage		P.11-5
USB Charge		P.12-15
Memory Card		P.2-22
Backup	Backup All Items	P.11-11
	Backup Selected Items	P.11-7
	Restore All Items	P.11-11
	Restore Selected Items	P.11-7
	Settings/Manage	P.11-11

Connectivity: Memory Card

Function		Refer to
DPOF	Number of Copies	P.6-11
	Settings	P.6-13
	Check Settings	P.6-11
	Reset Settings	-
SD Local Contents		-
Format Card		P.2-22
Memory Status		P.2-18

Call/Video Call

Function		Refer to
Call Time & Cost	Call Timers	P.3-7
	Data Counter	P.12-7
	Call Costs	P.3-7
Answer Phone	Switch On/Off	P.3-3
	Answer Time	-
	Outgoing Message	-
	Volume	-
Voicemail/ Divert	Voicemail	P.3-8
	Diverts	P.3-8
	Cancel All	P.3-9
	Status	P.3-12
Video Call	Camera Picture	P.12-7
	Incoming Picture	P.12-7
	Outgoing Picture	P.12-7
	Hold Guidance Pict	-
	Backlight	-
	Loudspeaker	P.12-7
	Mute Microphone	-
	Remote Monitor	P.3-10
Show My Number		P.3-13
out Missed Calls		P.3-9
Int'l Calling		-

Function		Refer to
Disp. Time/ Cost	Display Call Cost	P.12-7
	Call Time Counter	P.12-7
Call Barring	Outgoing Calls	-
	Incoming Calls	-
	Rejected Numbers	P.3-13
	Change NW Password	P.3-13
Minute Minder		P.12-7
Auto Answer		-
Call Waiting		P.3-12

Network Settings

Function		Refer to
Select Network		-
Select Service		-
Offline Mode		P.1-15
Retrieve NW Info		P.12-15
Location Info	URL Setting	-
	Datum On/Off	P.12-15
	Location Property	P.12-15
Network Info		-
External Device		-

Index

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

Y

Objectives

Warranty & Service

■ Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase handset.

- Check the name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

■ After-Sales Services

See **P.13-6** "Troubleshooting" before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs.

If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance (**P.13-38**) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, possible repairs are performed upon request at subscriber expense.

For other services, contact the distributor, the nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Center, General Information (**P.13-38**).

Replacement parts are available for 6 years after termination of production.

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of handset data. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may violate the Radio Law. Modified handset will not be repaired.

Customer Service

For SoftBank handset or service information, call General Information. For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at **157**
for General Information or **113** for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial +**81-3-5351-3491**
(International charges apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Phone Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	Free Call 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	Free Call 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	Free Call 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	Free Call 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-250-113

SoftBank 830SH Instruction Guide

October 2008, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 830SH

Manufacturer: SHARP CORPORATION

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク

携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.

Mind your mobile manners when carrying a handset.